The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Nova Scotia
Council Interpretations
(Under powers contained in section 25.A of the Chartered Accountants Act)

INTRODUCTION

Council periodically issues interpretations for the information and guidance of members and students, on matters related to the Rules of Professional Conduct. The Interpretations should be read in conjunction with the Rules, including the Foreword and its Application section. Council has not issued Interpretations on all of the Rules.

New Interpretations to the Rules, and amendments to existing Interpretations, are developed by Council in consultation with the Interprovincial Committee to Harmonize Rules of Professional Conduct. That committee has been established to co-ordinate among the Provincial Institutes/Ordre matters relating to Rules and Interpretations.
COMPLIANCE WITH BY-LAWS

Employing Students

CI 101/1 By-laws 47 to 49 provide that the office of a practicing member must be approved for the instruction of students before any offer of employment is made to a student. A breach of these by-laws is a breach of Rule 101 and, as such, exposes a member to disciplinary action.

Personal Bankruptcy

CI 101/2 Members who become bankrupt have a duty under by-law 41(A) to report the bankruptcy to the Executive Director no later than ten days after the event. Said members shall be automatically suspended from membership in the Institute, effective from the date the member became bankrupt.

CI 101/3 A member who has been suspended as a result of bankruptcy may apply to the Professional Conduct Section to have the suspension rescinded.

MATTERS TO BE REPORTED TO THE INSTITUTE

CI 102/1 Rules 102.1(a), 102.1(c), 102.1(d), 102.2 and 102.3 identify certain matters which must be reported to the Institute by members and students.

CI 102/2 Rules 102.1(b), 102.1(e) and 102.4 identify matters where a decision as to whether the matter should be reported to the Institute requires the exercise of professional judgment.

(a) Compliance with Rule 102.1(b) will require the exercise of professional judgment to determine whether a serious criminal offence diminishes the good reputation of the profession and its ability to serve the public interest.

(b) With respect to Rule 102.1(e), in some cases a violation of tax legislation may be very technical in nature or may be the result of an unintentional oversight. In addition, there may be occasions when an aggressive tax filing position does not withstand a challenge by taxation authorities and is found by the courts to be in contravention of tax legislation. Such situations may not explicitly involve dishonesty but will require the exercise of professional judgment to decide whether they implicitly involve dishonesty and must be reported.

(c) Compliance with Rule 102.4 will also require the exercise of professional judgment to determine whether a breach of the requirements of another regulatory body is a matter that involves acting in a professional capacity, relates to professional skills, or involves reliance on membership in or association with any provincial Institute.

CI 102/3 Members and students faced with a decision as to whether a matter is reportable are expected to exercise professional judgment and to be prepared to demonstrate how professional judgment was exercised, should it later be called into question. Therefore, it would be prudent to obtain legal advice, document the rationale behind a decision that a matter need not be reported and, if doubt remains, report the matter to the Institute.

CI 102/4 It is particularly important that the conduct of members and students in a matter that involves acting in a professional capacity, relates to professional skills, involves reliance on membership in or association with any provincial Institute or diminishes the good reputation of the profession and its ability to serve the public is subject to scrutiny. Accordingly, members and students are required to report offences of fraud, theft, forgery, money-laundering, extortion, counterfeiting, criminal organization activities, charging criminal interest rates, financing terrorism and similar offences related to financial matters, including offences involving a violation of any of the provisions of securities legislation.
There may also be occasions when a criminal offence is of such a nature that the conduct of a member or student has diminished the good reputation of the profession and its ability to serve the public interest, even though the offence may appear to be unrelated to the profession. Many such offences may still be serious and, accordingly, the member or student should evaluate the breach against the requirements of the Rules and in particular, Rule 201.1. Any such matters which do not meet those requirements must also be reported to the Institute.

In addition, when a member or student repeats a criminal offence that might not otherwise be reportable such repeat offences must also be reported to the Institute.

Members may hold membership in or registration with more than one provincial institute. Students are ordinarily registered with only one provincial institute. In order to properly protect the public across jurisdictions, where a member has been found guilty by or entered into a settlement agreement with one provincial institute, the member must report that finding or settlement agreement to any other provincial institute in which the member holds membership. In addition, some provincial institutes permit the resignation of members in order to resolve a disciplinary proceeding; in these cases, the member must also report such resignations to any other provincial institute in which membership is held.

Conduct which results in a breach of the requirements of another professional regulatory body is likely to diminish the good reputation of the profession or otherwise breach the Rules of Professional Conduct. Such breaches must be evaluated by the Institute against the requirements of the Rules and therefore, all such matters must be reported. Reporting of these matters is required whether they were addressed through a settlement agreement with or by a finding of guilt by the professional regulatory body.

Conduct which results in a breach of the requirements of any other regulatory body may also breach the Rules of Professional Conduct. In such situations, the member or student should exercise professional judgment to determine whether such a breach is a matter that involves acting in a professional capacity, relates to professional skills, or involves reliance on membership in or association with any provincial institute. The breach must be evaluated against the requirements of the Rules and in particular Rule 201.1, and any such matters which do not meet those requirements must be reported to the Institute. Reporting of these matters is required whether they were addressed through a settlement agreement with or by a finding of guilt by the other regulatory body.

A “regulatory body” is a quasi-judicial body that has power to compel a person to appear and answer to charges relating to compliance with its requirements. In this context, such a regulatory body’s requirements include legislation that it is empowered to enforce, whether against its own members or the public generally, codes of ethics, bylaws, regulations, professional or practice requirements and similar standards. Examples of regulatory bodies include, but are not limited to, competition, election, gaming, human rights, environmental protection and health and occupational safety bureaus, commissions and agencies.

A “professional regulatory body” is a quasi-judicial body that sets and maintains standards of qualification, attests to the competence of the individual practitioner, develops skills and standards of the profession, sets a code of ethical standards and enforces its professional and ethical standards. Such a body has power to compel a person to appear and answer to disciplinary actions relating to compliance with its standards. Examples of professional regulatory bodies include, but are not limited to, accounting, legal, actuarial, investment, real estate, engineering and financial planning professions.

In applying Rules 102.1 through 102.4, the words “guilt” and “guilty” include findings by a
regulatory body of a contravention, breach, violation, infringement and other similar term in relation to failures to comply with its requirements. Additionally, the imposition of a requirement or restriction on a member by a regulatory body is equivalent to "guilt". However, administrative orders for penalties such as late filing penalties from tax assessments or reassessments or interim cease trade orders of a securities regulator do not constitute findings of guilt.

CI 102/13 Members and students are reminded that confidentiality agreements with respect to matters described in Rule 102.1 through 102.4 do not provide an exemption from the reporting requirements of these rules.

REQUIREMENT TO CO-OPERATE
CI 104/1 The regulatory processes of the Institute include practice reviews, investigations into professional conduct, disciplinary or other hearings, admission or registration inquiries, and appeals of any decisions resulting from the aforementioned processes.

CI 104/2 Lack of co-operation includes attempts to delay, mislead or misdirect the Institute by concealing relevant information, providing false, incomplete or misleading statements or information, failing to respond to communications or otherwise obstructing the regulatory processes of the Institute. Lack of co-operation does not include good faith assertions of legal privilege.

CI 104/3 The requirement for prompt written replies and production of documents contemplates the establishment of a reasonable timeframe to respond to the request. Requests for reasonable extensions will not normally be refused, however, repeated requests without adequate grounds will be refused.

CI 104/4 Requirements for attendance in person may be modified by agreement between the Institute and the member or student to provide reasonable accommodations. However, repeated requests for alternative accommodations without adequate grounds will be refused.

CI 104/5 Subject to the agreement of the Institute, the requirement to attend in person may include attendance by teleconference, videoconference or other means.

CI 104/6 The requirement to co-operate with the Institute includes a requirement to co-operate with officers, staff, volunteers or agents acting on behalf of the Institute in matters described in Rules 104.1 and 104.2.

HINDRANCE, INAPPROPRIATE INFLUENCE AND INTIMIDATION
CI 105/1 Rule 105.1 which prohibits hindering or otherwise exerting inappropriate influence on the outcome of a specific regulatory matter, explicitly includes a reference to "inappropriate influence or pressure". The rule is not intended to prevent members or students from taking appropriate steps to advocate for or defend themselves or another member or student before the appropriate regulatory decision-making body within the Institute or the courts. Further, another member or student may act as an expert or other witness, provide letters of reference, or appear before the appropriate regulatory decision-making body within the Institute as the representative of the member or student.

CI 105/2 Without limiting the generality of the rule, in particular, when a complaint has been made against a member or student, the requirements of Rule 105.2 apply to any communication that the member or student has with the complainant. Any such communication must meet the requirements of Rule 105.2 and should ordinarily be limited to only those matters that must be addressed to continue to serve the interests of the complainant.
MAINTENANCE OF REPUTATION OF PROFESSION
COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATORY LEGISLATION

CI 201.1/1 Provincial as well as Federal legislation often requires licensing and may govern activities involving public accounting, dealing in securities, mortgage brokering, real estate brokering, practising law, acting as an employment agency, and handling trust monies.

CI 201.1/2 A member should be cognizant of and comply with the provisions of any Federal and Provincial legislation regulating activities in the various service areas of the member’s public practice.

CI 201.1/3 A member not engaged in public practice should be cognizant of and comply with the provisions of any legislative requirements pertaining to the members’ activities.

CI 201.1/4 In Nova Scotia, some of the legislation which could have application to a member’s activities is noted below.

Public Accountants Act
All members who offer public accounting services in Nova Scotia whether full or part-time, should be familiar with the provisions of the Public Accountants Act and must ensure that they obtain a licence to practice before offering services to the public; the licence must be kept up-to-date during the time that such services are offered.

Law Society Reports
Members who are asked to report to the Nova Scotia Barristers Society concerning lawyers’ trust accounts should note that these reports can be signed only by a licensed public accountant.

The Barristers Society report requires the public accountant to certify certain specific items set out in the report form; a member requiring clarification or guidance concerning these requirements should contact the Barristers Society.

Employment Agencies Act
The Employment Agencies Act, and regulations thereto, requires that those who, for a fee, procure persons for employment or employment for persons must obtain a licence under the legislation to perform the service. A licence is required for each office in Nova Scotia undertaking such assignments.

CRITICISM OF A PROFESSIONAL COLLEAGUE, FIRM OR OTHER PUBLIC ACCOUNTANT

CI 201.1/5 In the course of professional work, a member or firm may on occasion criticize a professional colleague, firm or other public accountant; such criticism may be direct, or may be implied by material adjustments to a client’s accounts considered necessary to correct work performed by the professional colleague, firm or other public accountant. It may be, however, that there are facts or explanations known to the professional colleague, firm or other public accountant concerned which could have a bearing on the matter.

CI 201.1/6 Unless limited or restricted in writing by the terms of the engagement, it is recommended that the member or firm first communicate any proposed criticism to the professional colleague, firm or other public accountant involved so that any eventual criticism takes into account all the available information. This is a step dictated by considerations both of professional courtesy and simple prudence.

CI 201.1/7 Paragraphs 5 and 6 apply to criticisms of a general nature as well as to criticisms of specific professional work of another professional colleague, firm or other public accountant.
Paragraph 6 does not apply to a member or firm bringing to the attention of the Executive Director any apparent breach of the Rules or any instance involving doubt as to the competence, reputation or integrity of a member, student applicant or firm, as required by Rule 211.

Reserved for future use

RESIGNATION OF AUDITORS

The Auditor of a company is appointed to represent the shareholders and has a duty to them. The Auditor should never lightly resign an appointment before reporting and should not resign at all before reporting if there is reason to suspect that the auditor’s resignation is required by reason of any impropriety or concealment, upon which it is the auditor’s duty to report. Subject to that general statement, however, there may be exceptional circumstances in a particular case which would justify the auditor’s resignation. This will be a matter of individual judgement in each case.

On occasion, the question arises of the duty of a member appointed auditor of an entity, who is asked to resign before reporting. While the following paragraphs deal with corporations, the nature of the guidance should be helpful in a similar situation with a non-corporate entity.

Statutory provisions with regard to auditors form a very important part of legislation. The whole background of corporation legislation makes it clear that the auditor fulfils an essential statutory and independent function and assumes statutory duties when accepting an appointment. As a general rule, the proper course for an appointed auditor to follow is the completion of the auditor’s statutory duties: having been appointed by the shareholders the auditor should report, as required in the legislation. The auditor should cease to act on behalf of a client only after a successor has been properly appointed and the auditor has been relieved or disqualified.

The question remains whether there are exceptions when a duly appointed auditor may resign at the request of a Board of Directors without fulfilling the auditor’s statutory duties. The answer depends on the circumstances. Certainly, the auditor of a company should not lightly resign under such circumstances, and should not resign at all, before reporting to the shareholders, if the auditor has any reason to believe that the resignation is required by reason of any impropriety or concealment which it is his or her duty to report upon.

However, exceptional circumstances may exist in a particular case which would justify an appointed auditor in acceding to a request for resignation. One example, appropriate only if a minority interest would not be prejudiced, would be where there is reason to believe that if a special meeting of the shareholders were to be called to relieve the auditor of the appointment, the necessary percentage of shareholders specified in the governing statute would terminate the auditor’s appointment. In such a case it may not be necessary for the auditor to insist on a special meeting being called.

An auditor should not voluntarily cease to act on behalf of a client after commencement of an audit engagement except for good and sufficient reason. Reasons may include:

(a) loss of trust in the client;
(b) the fact that the auditor is placed in a situation of conflict of interest or in circumstances where the auditor’s objectivity could reasonably be questioned; or
(c) inducement by the client to perform illegal, unjust or fraudulent acts.
CI 201.1/16 When an auditor is asked to resign or is contemplating resignation, it would be prudent for the auditor to consider obtaining legal advice.

ADVOCACY SERVICES
CI 201.4/1 When providing an advocacy service a member should bear in mind other rules of professional conduct, such as Rules 203.1 and 205. Rule 203.1 requires a member to sustain professional competence in all functions in which the member practises. Rule 205 requires a member not to associate with any letter, report, statement or representation which the member knows, or should know, is false or misleading.

CI 201.4/2 A member should ensure that the advocacy service does not constitute the practice of law.

INTEGRITY AND OBJECTIVITY (Council Interpretations to Rules 202.1 and 202.2)
CI 202/1 A person who acts with honesty and truthfulness and whose actions, values and principles are consistent is described as having integrity.

CI 202/2 Objectivity is a state of mind, which has regard to all considerations that are relevant but disregards those that are not. An objective person does not allow bias, conflict of interest or the influence of others to compromise judgment. The judgment of an objective person is intellectually honest. Objectivity should not be confused with neutrality or impartiality and, accordingly, the requirement to perform professional services with an objective state of mind does not preclude a member or student from acting as an advocate on behalf of others for whom the member or student performs professional services or a business owned by the member or student.

CI 202/3 Objectivity and integrity are two of the five fundamental principles of ethics, as stated in the Foreword to the Rules of Professional Conduct. These two principles are closely related and they are essential ethical elements in establishing the credibility of a chartered accountant. Objectivity is essential for any member or student to exercise professional judgment and act with integrity whether in public practice or elsewhere.

Professional Services
CI 202/4 The term “professional services” applies to all members and students whether or not they are engaged in the practice of public accounting. It includes those of the member’s or student’s activities where the public, colleagues or associates are reasonably entitled to rely on membership in, or registration as a student of, the Institute as giving the member or student particular competence. However, as discussed in paragraphs 7 through 11 of this Council Interpretation, the requirement to perform professional services with an objective state of mind does not preclude a member or student from acting as an advocate on behalf of others for whom the member or student performs professional services or a business owned by the member or student.

The Public Interest
CI 202/5 The public expects that a chartered accountant will bring the qualities of objectivity and integrity to all professional services. It therefore becomes essential that a member or student will not subordinate professional judgment to the will of others. When a possible ethical conflict arises because a more senior person in an organization overrides the professional judgment of a junior member or student, the more junior member or student should refer to the ethical conflict resolution guidance in the Foreword to the Rules of Professional Conduct.
A member or student may be exposed from time to time to situations that place pressures upon objectivity and integrity, and it would be impractical to define all such situations. However, such pressures are subject to powerful countervailing forces and restraints. These forces include liability in law, responsibility to the profession for professional actions and, most importantly, the ingrained resistance of a disciplined professional person to any infringement upon integrity. A chartered accountant recognizes that credibility and value as a professional depend largely on integrity and objectivity.

Members and students outside of public accounting

Employment with an organization outside the practice of public accounting requires a member or student to be accountable to the employing organization, subject to the law and the Rules of Professional Conduct. Responsibility to satisfy the needs of an employer must be balanced with responsibility to the profession. This requires the member or student to act objectively and with integrity, to avoid conflicts of interest and to exercise professional judgment in keeping with the guidance outlined in paragraph 5 of this Council Interpretation.

When a member or student is employed outside of public practice, there is a responsibility to further the legitimate aims of the employing organization. In promoting the organization’s position, the member or student should not make or be associated with false or misleading statements or statements which are not adequately supported.

Members and students are reminded that they may also be performing professional services when serving in the capacity of a volunteer and, accordingly, are subject to the requirement for objectivity when acting in that capacity.

Objectivity and advocacy

The requirement for an objective state of mind does not preclude a member or student from acting in an advocacy role for a client, unless it is otherwise prohibited by Rule 201.4, or from working to advance the best interests of an employer. A member’s or student’s effectiveness as an advocate in these cases is based on professional credibility, which is sustained by objectivity and integrity in addition to competence. However, a member or student must consider the ability to effectively advocate the client’s or employer’s position, while still maintaining objectivity and integrity. In any advocacy service, there is a possibility that circumstances may arise which stretch the bounds of performance standards, go beyond sound and reasonable professional or commercial practice or compromise credibility. Such circumstances may pose an unacceptable risk of impairing the reputation of the member or student and the firm, client and/or employer. In those circumstances, the member, student or firm should consider whether it is appropriate to perform the service.

A member or student who acts as an advocate for a client should refer to Rule 201.4. In such situations, the member or student should ensure that the advocacy role is apparent, and that statements made are not false or misleading and have adequate support.

Practice of Public Accounting – additional requirements

In addition to the general requirement to maintain an objective state of mind applicable to all professional services, a member or student in the practice of public accounting or a related function must ensure compliance with the requirements of the specific Rules of Professional Conduct in relation to:

(a) Independence, for certain types of engagement, (Rule 204 – see also paragraph 13 below); and
(b) Conflicts of interest (Rule 210).
The requirement to be objective is not the same as the requirement to be independent pursuant to Rule 204. When a member, student or firm performs an assurance engagement or an engagement to perform specified assurance procedures the public must be confident that those performing the engagement are free from influences which will impair professional judgment or objectivity. Accordingly, in addition to being objective, a member, student or firm in public practice who provides such a service is required to be independent of the assurance client. Objectivity is a state of mind. Independence is not only a state of mind; it also includes the appearance of independence, in the view of a reasonable observer. It is the reasonable observer test that distinguishes "independence" from "objectivity" and that gives the public the necessary confidence that the member, student or firm can express a conclusion without bias, conflict of interest or the undue influence of others. Rule 204 and the related Council Interpretations provide specific guidance on the independence requirements in these circumstances.

Continuing assessment of objectivity and integrity

A member or student must remain conscious of the need to remain objective and act with integrity in the conduct of all professional services, and must continually assess and manage the risks to objectivity and integrity. In the absence of specific rules, standards or guidance, a member or student should consider whether a member, without the relationships or influence that have put objectivity or integrity at risk would have come to the same decision with access to the same information. The member or student may wish to apply the ethical conflict resolution guidance in the Foreword to the Rules of Professional Conduct in circumstances where difficult decisions may be required. When an issue cannot be resolved in the member's or student's own mind, an experienced member should be consulted.

INDEPENDENCE

**EFFECTIVE DATES Council Interpretations - application of Rule 204 and the associated Council Interpretations as amended in June 2014**

In conjunction with making certain amendments to Rule 204 as approved by the members at the June 2014 Annual Meeting, Council amended the associated Council Interpretations. Because the amendments to Rule 204 become effective on a transitional basis (having regard to the type of engagement being undertaken), the amendments to the associated Council Interpretations (the "new Council Interpretations") also become effective on a transitional basis.

The full text of both the existing Council Interpretations CI 204/1- 204/3, CI 204.6, CI 204.7 and CI 204.8 (highlighted in grey) and the **new Council Interpretations CI 204, CI 204.7, CI 204.8 and CI 204.9 (highlighted in yellow)** are set out below.

A. Practitioners are required to comply with the existing Rules 204.1 - 204.8 unless the new Rules 204.1 - 204.10 apply.

B. In circumstances where practitioners are required to comply with the existing Rules 204.1 - 204.8, the existing Council Interpretations CI 204/1- 204/3, CI 204.6, CI 204.7 and CI 204.8 apply.

C. In circumstances where practitioners are required to comply with the new Rules 204.1 - 204.10, the new Council Interpretations CI 204, CI 204.7, CI 204.8 and CI 204.9 apply.

**Note:** Members are referred to the **EFFECTIVE DATES Rule 204 - application of Rule 204 as amended in June 2014** set forth in the Rules of Professional Conduct to determine when the new Rules 204.1 - 204.10 apply.
For the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.8 and the related Council Interpretations:

“accounting role” means a position in which a person may or does exercise more than minimal influence over:
(a) the contents of the financial statements; or
(b) anyone who prepares the financial statements.

“assurance client” means an entity in respect of which a member or firm has been engaged to perform an assurance engagement.

“assurance engagement” means an assurance engagement as contemplated in the CICA Handbook—Assurance.

“audit client” means an entity in respect of which a member or firm has been engaged to perform an audit of the financial statements. In the application of Rule 204.4(1) to (12) “audit client” includes its related entities, and the reference to an assurance client, a client or an entity that is an audit client shall be read as including all related entities of the assurance client, client or entity as the case may be.

“audit committee” means the audit committee of the entity, or if there is no audit committee another governance body which has the duties and responsibilities normally granted to an audit committee.

“audit engagement” means an engagement to audit financial statements as contemplated in the CICA Handbook—Assurance.

“audit partner” means a person who is a partner in a firm or a person who has equivalent responsibility, other than a specialist or technical partner or equivalent who consults with others on the engagement team regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events, who is a member of the audit engagement team having responsibility for decision-making on significant auditing, accounting, and reporting matters that affect the financial statements, or who maintains regular contact with management and the audit committee, and includes the following:
(a) the lead engagement partner;
(b) the engagement quality control reviewer;
(c) another partner who, during the engagement period, provides more than ten hours of assurance services in connection with the annual financial statements or interim financial information of the client; and
(d) a subsidiary entity engagement partner.

“clearly insignificant” means trivial and inconsequential.

“close family” means a parent, non-dependent child or sibling.

“direct financial interest” means a financial interest:
(a) owned directly by and under the control of an individual or entity (including those managed on a discretionary basis by others);
(b) beneficially owned through a collective investment vehicle, estate, trust or other intermediary over which the individual or entity has control;
(c) owned through an investment club or by a private mutual fund in which the individual participates in the investment decisions.

“engagement quality control reviewer”, often referred to as reviewing, concurring or second partner, means the audit partner who, prior to issuance of the audit report, evaluates the significant judgments made by the lead engagement partner and other persons on an engagement team, the conclusions reached in formulating the audit report and other significant matters that have come to the partner’s attention.
“engagement team” means
(a) each member of the firm participating in the assurance engagement;
(b) all other members of the firm who can directly influence the outcome of the assurance engagement, including:
   (i) those who recommend the compensation of, or who provide direct supervisory, management or other oversight of, the assurance engagement partner in connection with the performance of the assurance engagement. For the purposes of an audit engagement this includes those at all successively senior levels above the lead engagement partner through to the firm’s chief executive officer;
   (ii) those who provide consultation regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events for the assurance engagement; and
   (iii) those who provide quality control for the assurance engagement; and
(c) in the case of an audit client, all persons in a network firm who can directly influence the outcome of the audit engagement.

“financial interest” includes a direct or indirect ownership interest in an equity or other security, debenture, loan or other debt instrument of an entity, including rights and obligations to acquire such an interest and derivatives directly related to such interest.

“financial reporting oversight role” means a position in which a person may or does exercise influence over:
(a) the contents of the financial statements; or
(b) anyone who prepares the financial statements.

“firm” means a sole practitioner, partnership, professional corporation or association of members who carries or carry on the practice of public accounting, or carries or carry on related activities as defined by the Council.

“fund manager” means, with respect to a mutual fund, an entity that is responsible for investing the mutual fund’s assets, managing its portfolio trading and providing it with administrative and other services, pursuant to a management contract.

“immediate family” means a spouse (or equivalent) or dependant.

“indirect financial interest” means a financial interest beneficially owned through a collective investment vehicle such as a mutual fund, estate, trust or other intermediary over which the beneficial owner has no control.

“lead engagement partner” means the audit partner having primary responsibility for an audit or review engagement.

“market capitalization” in respect of a particular fiscal year means the average market price of all outstanding listed securities and publicly traded debt of the entity measured at the end of each of the first, second and third quarters of the prior fiscal year and the year-end of the second prior fiscal year.

“member of a firm’s or “member of the firm”, as the case may be, means a person, whether or not a member of a provincial Institute or Ordre, who is:
(a) a sole practitioner;
(b) a partner, professional employee or student of the firm;
(c) an individual engaged under contract by the firm to provide services that might otherwise be provided by a partner or professional employee of a firm;
(d) an individual who provides to the firm services which are referred to in Rule 204.1 and includes any corporate or other entity through which the individual contracts to provide such services; or
(e) a retired partner of the firm who retains a close association with the firm.

“mutual fund” means a mutual fund that is a reporting issuer under the applicable Canadian provincial or territorial securities legislation.”
“mutual fund complex” means:

(a) a mutual fund that has the same fund manager as a client;
(b) a mutual fund that has a fund manager that is controlled by the fund manager of a client; and
(c) a mutual fund that has a fund manager that is under common control with the fund manager of a client.

“network firm” means an entity under common control, ownership or management with a firm, or any entity that a reasonable observer who has knowledge of the facts would conclude to be part of a firm nationally or internationally. A network firm does not include an entity that constitutes a related business or practice, as defined, in Canada.

“office” means a distinct sub-group of a firm, whether organized on geographical or practice lines.

“related entity” means:

(a) in the case of a client that is a reporting issuer, an entity that has control over the client, or over which the client has control, or that is under common control with the client, including the client's parent company and any subsidiaries;
(b) in the case of a client that is not a reporting issuer:
   (i) an entity over which the client has control;
   (ii) an entity that has control over the client provided the client is material to such entity; and
   (iii) an entity that is under common control with the client provided that such entity and the client are both material to the controlling entity;
(c) in any case an entity over which a client has significant influence, unless the entity is not material to the client; and
(d) in any case an entity that has significant influence over a client, unless the client is not material to the entity.

“reporting issuer” means an entity that is deemed to be a reporting issuer under the applicable Canadian provincial or territorial securities legislation other than an entity that has, in respect of a particular fiscal year, market capitalization and total assets that are each less than $10,000,000. An entity that becomes a reporting issuer by virtue of the market capitalization or total assets becoming $10,000,000 or more in respect of a particular fiscal year shall be considered to be a reporting issuer thenceforward unless and until the entity ceases to have its shares, units or debt quoted, listed or marketed in connection with a recognized stock exchange or the entity has remained under the market capitalization or total assets threshold for a period of two years.

In the case of a reporting issuer that does not have listed securities or publicly traded debt, the definition of reporting issuer shall be read without reference to market capitalization.

In the case of a reporting issuer that does not have listed securities or publicly traded debt, the definition of reporting issuer shall be read without reference to market capitalization.

“review client” means an entity in respect of which a member or firm conducts a review engagement. In the application of Rule 204.4(1) to (12) “review client” includes its related entities, and the reference to an assurance client, a client or an entity that is a review client shall be read as including all related entities of the assurance client, client or entity, as the case may be.

“review engagement” means an engagement to review financial statements as contemplated in the CICA Handbook — Assurance.
“specified auditing procedures engagement” means an engagement to perform specified auditing procedures as contemplated in the *CICA Handbook — Assurance*.

“subsidiary entity engagement partner” means the lead engagement partner for an audit engagement related to the annual financial statements or interim financial information of an entity that is a subsidiary or joint venture of an audit client and whose assets or revenues constitute 20% or more of the assets or revenues of the audit client’s respective consolidated assets or revenues.

“total assets” in respect of a particular fiscal year means the amount of total assets presented on the third quarter of the prior fiscal year’s financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles that are filed with a relevant securities regulator or stock exchange. In the case of an entity that is not required to file quarterly financial statements, total assets in respect of a particular fiscal year means the amount of total assets presented on the annual financial statements of the second previous fiscal year prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles that are filed with a relevant securities regulator or stock exchange.
CI 204/2 Effective date and transitional provisions

Rules 204.1 to 204.8 shall take effect, no later than:
(a) for an assurance engagement in respect of a particular reporting period of a client, for the first reporting period commencing after December 31, 2003; and
(b) for any other assurance engagement and an engagement to issue a report of the results of applying specified auditing procedures where the engagement is commenced after December 31, 2003,
subject to the following transitional provisions, as may be applicable.

1. Provision of non-assurance services
The non-assurance services referred to in 204.4(22) to (33) do not include a service that has not been completed before January 1, 2004 where:
(i) There exists on December 31, 2003 a binding contract for the member or firm to provide the service;
(ii) The provision of the service is completed before January 1, 2005; and
(iii) The provision of the service by the member or firm would not have contravened the provisions of Rule 204.1 as it read prior to January 1, 2004.

2. Prior approval of audit and non-audit services
Rule 204.4 (21) shall come into effect when Multilateral Instrument 52-110, which requires pre-approval by the audit committee of all non-audit services to be provided to the reporting issuer or to its subsidiaries, becomes a rule enforced by the relevant securities regulator.

3. Employment relationships
The reference to employment in Rule 204.4(16) shall not apply to an employment relationship entered into by a person before January 1, 2004.

4. Compensation of audit partners
Rule 204.4(35) shall not apply to the compensation of an audit partner in respect of the fiscal period of the audit partner’s firm that includes December 31, 2003.

5. Audit partner rotation
Notwithstanding the requirements of 204.4(20):
(i) A lead engagement partner may continue in that role for a particular client up to and including the second fiscal year of the client commencing after December 31, 2003, notwithstanding that such partner has completed five or more years in that role, or in the role of engagement quality control reviewer, before that second fiscal year;
(ii) An engagement quality control reviewer may continue in that role for a particular client up to and including the third fiscal year of the client commencing after December 31, 2003, notwithstanding that such partner has completed five or more years in that role, or in the role of lead engagement partner, before that third fiscal year;
(iii) A partner referred to in Rule 204.4(20)(b) may continue in the particular role for up to seven years after December 31, 2003 notwithstanding that such partner has completed seven or more years in that role before the fiscal year of the particular client commencing after December 31, 2003;
(iv) A member may commence the role of lead engagement partner for a particular client prior to the end of the client’s second fiscal year commencing after December 31, 2003, and may continue in that role for five years, notwithstanding the number of years, if any, that the member was previously the engagement quality control reviewer for the particular client.
INTRODUCTION
1. It is a fundamental principle of the practice of Chartered Accountancy that a member who provides assurance services shall do so with unimpaired professional judgment and objectivity, and shall be seen to be doing so by a reasonable observer. This principle is the foundation for public confidence in the reports of assurance providers.

2. The confidence that professional judgment has been exercised depends on the unbiased and objective state of mind of the reporting accountant, both in fact and appearance. Independence is the condition of mind and circumstance that would reasonably be expected to result in the application by a member of unbiased judgment and objective consideration in arriving at opinions or decisions in support of the member’s report.
3. Rule 204.1 provides that a member or firm who engages or participates in an engagement:
   (a) to issue a written communication under the terms of any assurance engagement; or
   (b) to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures;
   must be independent of the client. Independence requires the avoidance of situations which
   impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member, firm or a member of the firm or
   which, in the view of a reasonable observer, would impair that professional judgment or
   objectivity.

4. Rule 204.2 provides that a member or firm, who is required to be independent pursuant to
   Rule 204.1 in respect of a particular engagement, must identify and evaluate threats to
   independence and, if they are not clearly insignificant, identify and apply safeguards to reduce
   them to an acceptable level. Where safeguards are not available to reduce the threats to an
   acceptable level the member or firm must eliminate the activity, interest or relationship
   creating the threats, or refuse to accept or continue the engagement. Rule 204.3 requires the
   member or firm to document compliance with Rule 204.2.

5. Rule 204.4 describes circumstances and activities which members and firms must avoid when
   performing assurance and specified auditing procedure engagements because adequate
   safeguards will not exist that will, in the view of a reasonable observer, eliminate the threat or
   reduce it to an acceptable level, as required by Rule 204.2. The requirements to avoid these
   circumstances and activities are referred to as “prohibitions.”

6. Rule 204.5 provides that a member or student must disclose breaches of the Rule to a
   designated partner in the firm. It also provides that, when a member or student has been
   assigned to an engagement team, the member or student must disclose to a designated
   partner any interest, relationship or activity that would preclude the member or student from
   being on the engagement team.

7. Rule 204.6 provides that a firm must ensure that members of the firm comply with Rule 204.4.
   The Rule provides that a firm shall not permit a member of the firm to have a relationship with
   or an interest in an assurance client, or provide a service to an assurance client, which is
   precluded by Rule 204.

8. This Council Interpretation describes a conceptual framework of principles that members and
   firms should use to identify threats to independence and evaluate their significance. If the
   threats are other than clearly insignificant, the member or firm should identify available
   safeguards. Some safeguards may already exist within the structure of the firm or the client,
   while others may be created by the action of the member, firm or client. Safeguards should be
   identified and, where applicable, applied to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an
   acceptable level. Members should exercise professional judgment to determine which
   safeguards to apply and whether the safeguards will permit the member or firm to accept or
   continue the engagement.

9. The effectiveness of safeguards largely depends on the culture of the particular firm. Therefore,
   the Council encourages leaders of firms to stress the importance of compliance with Rule 204
   and emphasize the expectation that members of the firm will act in the public
   interest. In doing so, firms should create and monitor effective policies and procedures
   designed to preserve the independence of the firm and its partners and employees when
   required by Rule 204.

10. The examples presented herein are intended to illustrate the application of the principles; they
    are not, nor should they be interpreted as, an exhaustive list of all circumstances that may
    create a threat to independence. Consequently, it is not sufficient for a member or a firm
    merely to comply with the examples presented. Rule 204.2 requires that they apply the
    principles to any particular circumstance encountered, whether or not the examples used in
    the Council Interpretation, or the prohibitions set out in Rule 204.4, reflect those
    circumstances.
11. These examples describe specific circumstances and relationships that may create threats to independence. They also describe the safeguards that may be appropriate to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level in each circumstance. While the examples relate to the audit or review of financial statements and other assurance engagements, they also apply to engagements to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures as required by Rule 204.1(b).

12. This Council Interpretation sets out how, in the Council’s opinion, a reasonable observer might view certain situations in the application of Rule 204.1 to 204.6. The reasonable observer is a hypothetical individual who has knowledge of the facts which the member knew or ought to have known, including the safeguards applied, and who applies judgment objectively, with integrity and due care. Members should also refer to the Foreword to the Rules, which provides the rationale for establishing the reasonable observer principle.

13. Members are reminded that for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.6, independence includes both independence of mind and independence in appearance. As stated in Rule 204.1, independence requires the absence of any influence, interest or relationship which would impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member or a member of the firm or which, in the view of a reasonable observer, would impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member or a member of the firm. Frequently it is appearance of independence, or lack thereof, that poses the greatest challenge. In all situations, members should reflect on the wording of the Rule and Council Interpretation to ensure compliance with the spirit and intent of the Rule and Council Interpretation.

14. If, after considering the rules and this Council Interpretation, members are uncertain as to their correct application, they are encouraged to discuss the matter with partners, professional colleagues or Institute staff.

15. Members should also be cognizant of any relevant Canadian or foreign legislation that may preclude a member from accepting or continuing an engagement. Members are cautioned that legislation under which corporations and other enterprises are incorporated or governed may impose differing requirements in respect of independence. Members should satisfy both the requirements of any governing legislation and these Rules of Professional Conduct.

16. Members and firms are reminded that Rules 204.7 and 204.8 deal respectively with independence standards for insolvency engagements and the requirement to disclose when the appearance of independence may be lacking in other engagements.

THE FRAMEWORK

17. The objective of this Council Interpretation is to assist members and firms in:
   (a) identifying and evaluating threats to independence; and
   (b) identifying and applying appropriate safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threat or threats to an acceptable level in instances where their cumulative effect is not clearly insignificant.

This Council Interpretation also describes those situations referred to in Rule 204.4 where safeguards are not available to reduce a threat or threats to an acceptable level, and the only possible actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating them, or to refuse to accept or continue the assurance engagement.

18. The use of the word “independence” on its own may create misunderstandings. Standing alone, the word may suggest that a person exercising professional judgment ought to be free from all economic, financial and other relationships. This is impossible, as everyone has relationships with others. Therefore, members should evaluate the significance of economic, financial and other relationships in the light of what a reasonable observer would conclude to be acceptable in maintaining independence.
19. In making this evaluation, many different circumstances may be relevant. Accordingly, it is impossible to define every situation that creates a threat to independence and specify the appropriate mitigating action. In addition, because of differences in the size and structure of firms, the nature of assurance engagements and client entities different threats may exist, that require the application of different safeguards. A conceptual framework that requires members and firms to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence, rather than merely comply with a set of specific and perhaps arbitrary rules, is, therefore, in the public interest.

20. Based on such an approach, this Council Interpretation describes a conceptual framework of principles for compliance with Rules 204.1 to 204.6. Members, firms and network firms should use this conceptual framework to identify threats to independence, to evaluate their significance and, if they are other than clearly insignificant, to identify and apply safeguards to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level, so that independence of fact and appearance are not impaired. In addition, consideration should be given to whether relationships between members of the firm who are not on the engagement team and the assurance client may also create threats to independence. Where safeguards are not available to reduce threats to an acceptable level, the member, firm or network firm should eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threats, or the member or firm should refuse to accept or continue the particular engagement.

21. Rule 204.1 requires members and firms to be independent in fact and in appearance. The requirement to comply with the specific prohibitions set out in Rule 204.4 does not relieve a firm from complying with Rules 204.1 and 204.2 and the need to apply the conceptual framework and determine on a principles-based approach whether or not the firm is independent with respect to all assurance engagements, including audit and review engagements.

22. Rule 204.1 and therefore, the principles in this Council Interpretation apply to all assurance engagements and engagements to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures. The nature of the threats to independence and the applicable safeguards necessary to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level will differ depending on the particulars of the engagement. Differences in threats and safeguards will arise, for example, if the engagement is an audit or review engagement or another type of assurance engagement; and, in the case of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, in the purpose, subject matter and intended users of the report. Members and firms should, therefore, evaluate the relevant circumstances, the nature of the engagement and the entity, the threats to independence and the adequacy of available safeguards in deciding whether it is appropriate to accept or continue an engagement, and whether a particular person should be on the engagement team.

23. For audit clients and review clients, the persons on the engagement team, the firm and network firms should be independent of the client. In the case of an assurance engagement where the client is neither an audit nor a review client, those on the engagement team and the firm should be independent of the client. In addition, in the case of an engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, consideration should be given to any threats the firm has reason to believe may be created by the interests and relationships of network firms.

24. The term “firm” means a sole practitioner, partnership or association of members who carries or carry on the practice of public accounting, or carries or carry on related activities as defined by the Council. A related activity includes a related business or practice that is cross-referenced with a practice of public accounting or with any other business or practice which is cross-referenced with a practice of public accounting in
accordance with Rule 420. In those jurisdictions where a member or a firm may practice in a corporate form, firm includes a professional corporation.

25. The term “network firm” means an entity under common control, ownership or management with a firm or an entity that a reasonable observer who has knowledge of the facts would conclude to be part of the firm nationally or internationally. The term “network firm” does not, however, include a related business or practice, as defined, in Canada.

26. The references to “firms” and “network firms” in Rules 204.1 to 204.6 and this Council Interpretation should be read as referring to those entities themselves and not to the persons who are partners or employees thereof.

27. An engagement to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures is not an assurance engagement as contemplated in the CICA Handbook — Assurance. However, for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.6 and this Council Interpretation, the principles contained herein applicable to an assurance engagement, other than an audit or review engagement, also apply to an engagement to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures. In so applying those principles, the reference to an assurance client is to be read as a reference to a client where the engagement is to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures.

28. In the case of an assurance report to an assurance client that is not an audit client or a review client where the report is intended only for the use of identified users, as contemplated by the CICA Handbook — Assurance, the users of the report are considered to be knowledgeable as to the purpose, subject matter and limitations of the report. Users gain such knowledge through their participation in establishing the nature and scope of the member’s or firm’s engagement, including the criteria by which the particular subject matter is to be evaluated. The member’s or firm’s knowledge and enhanced ability to communicate about safeguards with all the report’s users increase the effectiveness of safeguards to independence in appearance. Therefore, the member or firm may take these circumstances into account when evaluating the threats to independence and considering the applicable safeguards necessary to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level. With respect to network firms, limited consideration of any threats created by their interests and relationships may be sufficient.

29. The effect of Rules 204.1 to 204.6 is that:

(a) For an assurance engagement for a client that is an audit or review client, those on the engagement team, the firm and network firms are required to be independent of the client.

(b) For an assurance engagement for a client that is not an audit or review client, when the assurance report is not intended only for the use of identified users, those on the engagement team and the firm are required to be independent of the client.

(c) For an assurance engagement for a client that is not an audit or review client, when the assurance report is intended only for the use of identified users, those on the engagement team are required to be independent of the client. In addition, the firm should not have a material direct or indirect financial interest in the client.

30. The threats and safeguards identified in this Council Interpretation are generally discussed in the context of interests or relationships between the firm, a network firm, those on the engagement team and the assurance client. In the case of an audit or review client the prohibitions with respect to financial interests are extended to related entities of the client and in the case of an audit client that is a reporting issuer, the prohibitions with respect the provision of non-assurance services are extended to related entities of the audit client. For assurance clients other than audit and review clients, when the engagement team has reason to believe that a related entity of the client is relevant to the evaluation of the firm’s independence, the engagement team should consider that
related entity when evaluating threats to independence and applying appropriate safeguards.

31. For the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.6 a related entity of a client that is a reporting issuer means:

- an entity that has control over a client;
- an entity over which the client has control;
- an entity which is under common control with the client;
- an entity over which the client has significant influence, unless the entity is not material to the client; and
- an entity which has significant influence over the client, unless the client is not material to the entity.

The definition of a related entity for a client that is not a reporting issuer excludes from the above an entity that has control over the client if the client is not material to the entity, and an entity under common control with the client if both the client and the entity under common control are not material to the entity that controls them.

32. In determining whether significant influence exists members should follow the guidance established in the CICA Handbook – Accounting. Ideally, the client’s related entities and the interests and relationships that involve the related entities should be identified in advance.

33. A retired partner who retains a close association with the firm from which the partner has retired is considered to be a member of the firm for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.6 and the related Council Interpretation. Retired partners may have varying degrees of involvement with the firm. When a retired partner continues to provide administrative or client service for or on behalf of the firm, the partner may be closely associated with the firm. The following factors may indicate that the partner retains a close association with the firm:

- the nature and extent of the retired partner’s client and administrative activities within the firm may be more than clearly insignificant and transitional;
- the retired partner holds a direct or indirect financial interest in the firm, including share-based retirement income that may fluctuate with the firm’s income; and
- the retired partner is held out to be a member of the firm through, for example, having a separate, identified office on the firm’s premises, acting as its spokesperson or representative, using a firm business card or having a listing in the firm’s telephone directory for other than a predetermined period of time following retirement.

When evaluating whether a retired partner has a close association with the firm, consideration should be given to how a reasonable observer would regard the association.

34. Rules 204.1 to 204.4 and this Council Interpretation bring the independence of a network firm into consideration when evaluating the independence of a member or firm for an audit or review engagement. It is the member’s or firm’s responsibility to determine whether the network firm and its members have any interests or relationships or provide any services that would create threats to independence.

35. The ongoing evaluation and disposition of threats to independence should be supported by evidence obtained both before accepting an engagement and while it is being performed. The obligation to make such evaluation and take action arises when a member of a firm or network firm knows, or should reasonably be expected to know, of circumstances or relationships that might impair independence. There may be occasions when a member, a firm or a network firm is inadvertently in breach of the principles in this Council Interpretation. If such an inadvertent breach occurs, it would generally not impair independence for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.6, provided the firm had appropriate quality control policies and procedures in place to promote independence.
and, once discovered, the breach was corrected promptly and any necessary safeguards were applied. An inadvertent breach would include a situation where the member did not know of the circumstances that created the breach.

36. Rules 204.1 to 204.6 and this Council Interpretation describe the threats to independence and analyzes safeguards that may be capable of eliminating them or reducing them to an acceptable level. It concludes with some examples of how this conceptual framework to independence is to be applied to specific circumstances and relationships and the relevant threats and safeguards. The examples are not all inclusive. Professional judgment should be used to determine whether appropriate safeguards exist to eliminate all threats to independence or to reduce their cumulative effect to an acceptable level. In some examples, it may be possible to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. In some other examples, the threat or threats to independence will be so significant that the only possible actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threat or threats, or to refuse to accept or continue the engagement.

37. When a member or firm identifies a threat to independence that is not clearly insignificant, and the member or firm decides to apply appropriate safeguards and accepts or continues the assurance engagement, the decision should be documented in accordance with Rule 204.3. The documentation should include the following information:

(a) a description of the nature of the engagement;
(b) the threat identified;
(c) the safeguard or safeguards identified and applied to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level; and
(d) an explanation of how, in the member or firm’s professional judgment, the safeguards eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

38. Throughout this Council Interpretation, reference is made to “significant” and “clearly insignificant.” In considering the significance of any particular matter, qualitative as well as quantitative factors should be taken into account. A matter should be considered clearly insignificant only if it is both trivial and inconsequential.

THREATS TO INDEPENDENCE

39. Independence is potentially affected by self-interest, self-review, advocacy, familiarity and intimidation threats. The mere existence of such threats does not per se mean that the performance of a prospective engagement is precluded. The undertaking or continuation of engagement is only precluded where safeguards are not available to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level or where Rule 204.4 provides a specific prohibition.

40. A Self-Interest Threat occurs when a firm or a person on the engagement team could benefit from a financial interest in, or other self-interest conflict with, an assurance client. Examples of circumstances that may create a self-interest threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in an assurance client;
(b) a loan or guarantee to or from an assurance client or any of its directors or officers;
(c) dependence by a firm, office or member on total fees from an assurance client;
(d) undue concern about the possibility of losing the engagement;
(e) compensating an audit partner for selling non-audit services to an audit client;
(f) having a close business relationship with an assurance client; and
(g) potential employment with an assurance client.

41. A Self-Review Threat occurs when any product or judgment from a previous engagement needs to be evaluated in reaching conclusions on the particular assurance engagement, or when a person on the engagement team was previously a director or
Examples of circumstances that may create a self-review threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a person on the engagement team being, or having recently been, a director or officer of the client;
(b) a person on the engagement team being, or having recently been, an employee of the assurance client in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement;
(c) a member or firm performing services for an assurance client that directly affect the subject matter of the engagement; and
(d) a member or firm preparing original data used to generate financial statements or preparing other records that are the subject matter of the engagement.

42. An Advocacy Threat occurs when a firm, or a person on the engagement team, promotes, or may be perceived to promote, an assurance client's position or opinion to the point that objectivity may be, or may be perceived to be, impaired. Such would be the case if a person on the engagement team was to subordinate his or her judgment to that of the client, or the firm was to do so. Examples of circumstances that may create an advocacy threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) dealing in, or being a promoter of, shares or other securities of an assurance client; and
(b) acting as an advocate on behalf of an assurance client in litigation or in resolving disputes with third parties.

43. A Familiarity Threat occurs when, by virtue of a close relationship with an assurance client, its directors, officers or employees, a firm or a person on the engagement team becomes too sympathetic to the client's interests. Examples of circumstances that may create a familiarity threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a person on the engagement team having an immediate or close family member who is director or officer of the assurance client;
(b) a person on the engagement team having an immediate or close family member who, as an employee or shareholder of the assurance client, is in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement;
(c) a former partner of the firm being a director, officer or employee of the assurance client in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement;
(d) the long association of a senior person on the engagement team with the assurance client; and
(e) the acceptance of gifts or hospitality from the assurance client, its directors, officers or employees, unless the value thereof is clearly insignificant.

44. An Intimidation Threat occurs when a person on the engagement team may be deterred from acting objectively and exercising professional skepticism by threats, actual or perceived, from the directors, officers or employees of an assurance client. Examples of circumstances that may create an intimidation threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) the threat of being replaced due to a disagreement with the application of an accounting principle; and
(b) the application of pressure to inappropriately reduce the extent of work performed in order to reduce or limit fees.

SAFEGUARDS

45. Members and firms have an ongoing responsibility to comply with Rules 204.1 to 204.6
by taking into account the context in which they practise, the threats to independence and the safeguards which may be available to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Safeguards fall into three broad categories:

(a) safeguards created by the profession, legislation or regulation;
(b) safeguards within the assurance client; and
(c) safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures.

46. Safeguards created by the profession, legislation or regulation include the following:

(a) education, training and practical experience requirements for entry into the profession;
(b) continuing education programs;
(c) professional standards;
(d) external practice inspection;
(e) disciplinary processes;
(f) members’ practice advisory services;
(g) participation by members of the public in oversight and governance of the profession; and
(h) legislation governing the independence requirements of the firm and its members.

47. Safeguards within the assurance client may include the following:

(a) employees of the client who are competent to make management decisions;
(b) policies and procedures that emphasize the client’s commitment to fair financial reporting;
(c) internal procedures that ensure objective choices in commissioning non-assurance engagements; and
(d) an audit committee that provides appropriate oversight and communications regarding a firm’s services.

48. When audit committees are independent of client management they can have an important corporate governance role and can assist the board of directors in satisfying themselves that a member or a firm is independent in carrying out its audit role. The requirements for annual communication with the audit committee on matters relating to independence is included in the CICA Handbook — Assurance.

49. Firms should establish policies and procedures for independence-related communications with audit committees. Matters to be communicated will vary in each circumstance and should be decided by the firm, but should generally address the relevant matters set out in the CICA Handbook—Assurance.

50. Safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures may include firm-wide safeguards such as the following:

(a) firm leadership that stresses the importance of independence and the expectation that persons on engagement teams will act in the public interest;
(b) policies and procedures to implement and monitor quality control of assurance engagements;
(c) documented independence policies regarding the identification of threats to independence, the evaluation of their significance and the identification and application of appropriate safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats, other than those that are clearly insignificant, to an acceptable level;
(d) internal policies and procedures, including annual reporting by members of the firm, to monitor compliance with firm policies and procedures as they relate to independence;
(e) policies and procedures that will enable the identification of interests or relationships between the firm or those on the engagement team and assurance clients;
(f) policies and procedures to monitor and manage the reliance on revenue received from a single assurance client;

(g) internal performance measures that do not put excessive pressure on partners to generate non-assurance revenue from their assurance clients and do not over emphasize budgeted hours;

(h) using different partners and teams with separate reporting lines for the provision of non-assurance services to an assurance client;

(i) policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm who are not on the engagement team from influencing the outcome of the assurance engagement;

(l) timely communication of a firm’s policies and procedures, and any changes thereto, to all members of the firm, including appropriate training and education thereon;

(k) designating a member of the firm’s senior management as responsible for overseeing the adequate functioning of the safeguarding system;

(1) means of advising all members of the firm of those clients and related entities from which they should be independent;

(m) an internal disciplinary mechanism to promote compliance with firm policies and procedures; and

(n) policies and procedures that empower members of the firm to communicate, without fear of retribution, to senior levels within the firm any issue of independence and objectivity that may concern them.

51. Safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures may include engagement-specific safeguards such as the following:

(a) involving another person to review the work done or advise as necessary. This person could be someone from outside the firm or network firm, or someone from within who was not otherwise associated with the engagement team. The person should be independent of the assurance client and will not, by reason of the review performed or advice given, be considered to be on the engagement team;

(b) consulting a third party, such as a committee of independent directors, a professional regulatory body or a professional colleague;

(c) rotating senior personnel on the engagement team;

(d) discussing independence issues with the audit committee;

(e) disclosing to the audit committee, the nature of services provided and extent of fees charged;

(f) policies and procedures designed to ensure that persons on the engagement team do not make, or assume responsibility for, management decisions for the client;

(g) involving another firm to perform or re-perform part of the assurance engagement;

(h) involving another firm to re-perform the non-assurance service; and

(i) removing a person from the engagement team, when that person’s financial interests, relationships or activities create a threat to independence.

52. The size and structure of the firm and the nature of the assurance client and the engagement will affect the type and degree of the threats to independence and, consequently, the types of safeguards appropriate to eliminate such threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. For example, it is understood that not all the safeguards noted in paragraphs 47 - 51 will be available to the sole practitioner or small firm or within smaller clients such as owner-managed entities. Smaller clients often rely on members to provide a broad range of accounting and business services. Independence will not be impaired provided such services are not specifically prohibited by Rule 204.4 and provided safeguards are applied to reduce any threat to an acceptable level. In many circumstances, explaining the result of the service and obtaining client approval and
acceptance for the result of the service will be an appropriate safeguard for such smaller
telegrams. Similarly, such clients often have a long-standing relationship with an individual
who is a sole practitioner or partner from a firm. Independence will not be impaired
provided safeguards are applied to reduce any familiarity threat to an acceptable level. In
most circumstances, periodic external practice inspection and, where appropriate,
consultation will reduce any threat to independence to an acceptable level.

ENGAGEMENT PERIOD
53. The firm and those on the engagement team should be independent of the assurance
client during the period of the assurance engagement. This period starts when the
member or firm engages to perform the assurance service and ends when the assurance
report is issued, except when the engagement is of a recurring nature. If the assurance
engagement is expected to recur, the engagement period ends with the notification by
either party that the professional relationship has terminated or the issuance of the final
assurance report, whichever is later. In the case of an audit engagement for a reporting
issuer the engagement period ends when the audit client or the firm notifies the relevant
Securities Commission that the audit client is no longer an audit client of the firm.

54. In the case of an audit or review engagement, independence is also required during the
period covered by the financial statements reported on by the member or firm. When an
entity becomes an audit or review client during or after the period covered by the financial
statements that the member or firm will report on, the member or firm should consider
whether any threats to independence may be created by:

(a) financial or business relationships with the client during or after the period covered by
the financial statements, but prior to the acceptance of the engagement; or

(b) previous services provided to the client.

Similarly, in the case of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review
engagement, the member or firm should consider whether any financial or business
relationships or previous services may create threats to independence.

55. If a non-assurance service was provided to an audit or review client during or after the
period covered by the financial statements but before the commencement of professional
services in connection with the audit or review engagement, and the non-assurance
service would impair independence if it had been provided during the period of the audit
or review engagement, consideration should be given to the threats to independence, if
any, arising from the provision of the non-assurance service. If a threat is other than
clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable
level. Such safeguards might include:

(a) discussing independence issues related to the provision of the non-assurance
service with the audit committee;

(b) requiring the client to review and accept responsibility for the results of the non-
assurance service;

(c) precluding personnel who provided the non-assurance service from participating in
the audit or review engagement; and

(d) engaging another firm to review the results of the non-assurance service or having
another firm re-perform that service.

If adequate safeguards are not available to reduce a threat to an acceptable level, the
member or firm should decline the audit or review engagement.

REPORTING ISSUERS
56. A non-assurance service provided to an audit client that is not a reporting issuer would
not impair the firm’s independence when the client becomes a reporting issuer, provided:

(a) the previous non-assurance service was not prohibited by Rule 204.4 for an audit
client that is not a reporting issuer; and
(b) the firm had implemented appropriate safeguards to eliminate or reduce to an
acceptable level any threats to independence arising from the previous service.

57. For the purposes of Rule 204.4 an entity becomes a reporting issuer by virtue having
market capitalization or total assets in excess of $10,000,000. In the case of a period in
which an entity makes a public offering, market capitalization is measured at the closing
price on the day of the public offering and total assets refers to the total assets presented
on the most recent financial statements, prepared in accordance with generally accepted
accounting principles, that are included in the offering document.

58. When an entity becomes a reporting issuer by virtue of a public offering, the auditor of
the entity is required, from that period forward until the entity ceases to be a reporting
issuer, to comply with the specific prohibitions contained in Rule 204.4 that relate to an
audit of a reporting issuer. For example, bookkeeping services may not be provided
following the date of an initial public offering where the market capitalization or total
assets of the entity exceed $10,000,000. The provision of bookkeeping services to the
entity prior that date would not impair the firm’s independence provided the services were
not prohibited by Rule 204.4(23) and provided the firm had implemented appropriate
safeguards to eliminate, or reduce to an acceptable level, any threats to independence
arising from the provision of the services. Such safeguards might include:

- discussing the matter with the audit committee; or
- involving an additional member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the
  engagement team to advise on the impact of the bookkeeping services provided on
  the independence of the persons on the engagement team and the firm.

APPLICATION OF THE FRAMEWORK

59. The following examples describe the application of the framework to specific
circumstances and relationships that may create threats to independence. The examples
describe potential threats created and safeguards that may be appropriate to eliminate
the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. The examples are not intended to be
comprehensive or all-inclusive. In practice, when independence is required, members
and firms should assess the implications of all circumstances and relationships and,
where required, assess those of network firms, to determine whether there are threats to
independence that are other than clearly insignificant and, if they exist, whether
safeguards can be applied to satisfactorily address them. In situations where safeguards
are not available to reduce a threat or threats to an acceptable level, the only possible
actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threats, or to
refuse to accept or continue the assurance engagement.

60. A financial interest in an assurance client may create a self-interest threat. In evaluating
the significance of the threat, and the appropriate safeguards to be applied to eliminate
the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, it is necessary to examine the nature of the
financial interest. This includes an evaluation of the role of the person holding the
financial interest, whether that interest is material and whether it is direct or indirect.

61. When evaluating whether a financial interest is direct or indirect, consideration should be
given to the fact that financial interests range from those where the individual has no
control over the investment vehicle or the financial interest held (e.g., a mutual fund or
similar intermediary vehicle) to those where the individual has control over the financial
interest (e.g., as a trustee) or is able to influence investment decisions of the entity in
which the particular financial interest exists. In evaluating the significance of any threat to
independence, it is important to consider the degree of control or influence that can be
exercised over the intermediary, the financial interest held, or the intermediary’s
investment strategy. When control exists, the financial interest should be considered
June 2014

Section CI [27]

direct. Conversely, when control does not exist the financial interest should be considered indirect.

62. In the application of Rules 204.4(1) to (12) to an audit or review client the reference to an assurance client, a client or an entity includes related entities, as defined, of the assurance client, client or entity, as the case may be.

**Assurance clients**

63. Rule 204.4(1) provides that a member or student who participates on an engagement team for an assurance client, including an audit or review client, and the member’s or student’s immediate family may not hold a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client.

64. A reasonable observer will not view a member who holds a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest as a trustee differently than someone who holds the interest beneficially. Accordingly Rule 204.4(1) applies to members, students and immediate family of members or students who hold a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in the capacity of a trustee.

65. When a person on an engagement team, or any of the person’s immediate family, receives, for example, by way of gift or inheritance or as a result of a merger or reorganization, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in a particular assurance client, or a related entity of the client in the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, one of the following actions should be taken to comply with Rule 204.4(1):

- dispose of the financial interest at the earliest practical date but no later than 30 days after the person has knowledge of the financial interest and the right or ability to dispose of it; or
- remove the person from the engagement team.

During the period prior to disposal of the financial interest or the removal of the person from the engagement team, consideration should be given to whether additional safeguards are necessary to reduce the threat to independence to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- discussing the matter with the audit committee; or
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and has not been, on the engagement team to review the work done by the person, or advise as necessary.

66. When a person on an engagement team knows that a close family member has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the particular assurance client, or a related entity of the client in the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, a self-interest threat may exist. In evaluating the significance of any such threat, consideration should be given to the nature of the relationship between the person on the engagement team and the close family member and the materiality of the financial interest. Once the significance of the threat has been evaluated, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:

- the close family member disposing of all or a sufficient portion of the financial interest at the earliest practical date;
- discussing the matter with the audit committee;
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular person on the engagement team or advise as necessary; or
- removing the person from the engagement team.

67. Consideration should be given to whether a self-interest threat may exist because of the financial interests of individuals other than those on the engagement team and their
immediate and close family. Such individuals would include:

- a member of the firm who provides a non-assurance service to the assurance client;
- a member of the firm who has a close personal relationship with a person on the engagement team;
- a spouse or dependant of an immediate or close family member of a person on the engagement team; and
- an individual for whom a member of the engagement team holds power of attorney.

Whether the interests held by such individuals may create a self-interest threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the firm’s organizational, operating and reporting structure;
- the nature of the relationship between the individual and the person on the engagement team; and
- in the case of a power of attorney, the degree of decision making power granted by the power of attorney.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- where appropriate, policies to prohibit such individuals from holding such interests;
- discussing the matter with the audit committee; or
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular individual or advise as necessary.

A. FINANCIAL INTERESTS

68. Subject to Rule 204.4(7) relating to an audit or review engagement, the specific prohibitions of Rule 204.4 do not preclude a firm from accepting an assurance engagement with an entity if one or more partners of the firm who do not participate on the engagement team, and who do not practice in the same office as the lead engagement partner, have a financial interest in the entity. However, Rule 204.1 requires the firm to be independent in fact and appearance and requires the firm to identify threats to independence arising from such circumstances, evaluate the significance of the threats and, if they are other than clearly insignificant, apply safeguards to reduce the threats to an acceptable level. If adequate safeguards are not available the firm should not accept the engagement.

69. An inadvertent breach of the principles in this Council Interpretation as they relate to a financial interest in an assurance client, or a related entity of the client in the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, would not impair the independence of the member of the firm or the firm when:

- the firm has established policies and procedures that require a network firm and all members of the firm to report promptly any breaches resulting from the purchase, inheritance or other acquisition of a financial interest in the assurance client;
- the firm promptly notifies the network firm or the member of the firm that the financial interest should be disposed of; and
- the disposal occurs at the earliest practical date after identification of the issue, but no later than 30 days after the person has both the knowledge of the financial interest and the right or ability to dispose of it, or the person is removed from the engagement team.

70. When an inadvertent breach of the principles relating to a financial interest in an assurance client has occurred, the firm should consider whether, and if so which, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:
• involving another member of the firm who is not, and has not been, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular member involved in the breach; or
• excluding the particular person from any substantive decision-making concerning the assurance engagement.

Members are reminded that Rule 204.5 requires a member who has an interest that is precluded by this Rule to advise in writing a designated partner of the firm of the interest. Inadvertent breaches are also discussed in paragraph 35 of this Council Interpretation.

### Audit or review clients

71. Rule 204.4(2) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if the member, firm or a network firm has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the entity or in a related entity of the entity.

72. Rule 204.4(3) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if a pension or other retirement plan of the firm or a network firm has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the entity or in a related entity of the entity.

73. Rule 204.4(4) provides that a partner of a firm who holds, or whose immediate family holds, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an audit or review client of the firm, or a related entity of the client, may not practice in the same office as the lead engagement partner for the client.

74. The office in which the lead engagement partner practices in connection with an audit or review engagement is not necessarily the office to which that partner is ordinarily assigned. Accordingly, for the purposes of Rule 204.4 (4) and this Council Interpretation, when the lead engagement partner is located in a different office from others on the engagement team, professional judgment should be exercised to determine in which office the partner practices in connection with the audit or review engagement.

75. Rule 204.4(5) provides that a partner or managerial employee of a firm who holds, or whose immediate family holds, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an audit or review client of the firm, or in a related entity of the client, may not provide a non-assurance service to the client, unless the non-assurance service is clearly insignificant.

76. Subject to Rule 204.4(7), a financial interest in an audit or review client, or a related entity of the client, that is held by an immediate family member of:

• a partner located in the office in which the lead engagement partner practices in connection with the audit or review engagement; or
• a member of the firm who provides a non-assurance service to the client;

would not create an unacceptable threat to independence provided the financial interest is received as a result of the immediate family member’s employment rights (e.g., pension rights or share options) and, where appropriate, safeguards are applied to reduce any threat to independence to an acceptable level.

77. A self-interest threat may exist if the firm, or the network firm, or a person on the engagement team has a financial interest in a particular entity, and an audit or review client or a director, officer or controlling owner thereof also has a financial interest in that entity. Independence is not impaired with respect to the audit or review client if the respective financial interests of the firm, the network firm, or person on the engagement team, and the client or director, officer or controlling owner thereof are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the entity.

78. Rule 204.4(6) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for a client if the firm or a network firm has a financial interest in another
entity, and the member or firm knows that the client or a director, officer or controlling owner of the client also has a financial interest in the other entity, unless the respective financial interests referred to are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the other entity. In addition, a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an audit or review client if that person has a financial interest in another entity and knows that the client or a director, officer or controlling owner of the client also has a financial interest in the entity, unless the respective financial interests referred to are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the entity.

79. Rule 204.4(7) provides that a member or a firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if a partner or a professional employee of the firm owns, or such person’s immediate family owns, more than 0.1% of the securities of the entity or controls the entity by means other than the ownership of the majority of the entity’s common shares. The rule further provides that such interest may not be held in a related entity of the entity.

80. Rule 204.4(8) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team of an audit or review client if such person knows that his or her close family owns more than 0.1% of the securities of the client, or a related entity of the client, or controls the client, or a related entity of the client, by means other than the ownership of the majority of the entity’s common shares. Rule 204.4(8) only applies when the person has knowledge of the securities held by his or her close family member. The rule does not put an onus on the person to determine which, if any, securities his or her close family members hold.

Assurance clients that are not audit or review clients

81. Rule 204.4(9) provides that a firm may not have a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an assurance client that is not an audit or review client. It also provides that a firm may not have a material financial interest in an entity that has a controlling interest in an assurance client that is not an audit or review client. The rule does not extend to related entities of the client.

82. With respect to a restricted-use report for an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, members are referred to the provisions in paragraph 28 of this Council Interpretation.

B. LOANS AND GUARANTEES

83. Rule 204.4(10) provides that a firm may not have a loan from or have a loan guaranteed by an assurance client except where the client is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is immaterial to the firm and the client and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and is in good standing. The rule further provides that a firm may not make a loan to an assurance client that is not a bank or similar financial institution nor guarantee a loan of an assurance client.

84. Rule 204.4(11) provides that a firm may not accept a loan from, or have a loan guaranteed by an officer or director of an assurance client, or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% of its equity securities. In addition, a firm shall not make a loan to, or guarantee a loan of, such a person.

85. Rule 204.4(12) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client of the firm if:

(a) the member or student accepts a loan from, or has a loan guaranteed by, the client, unless the client is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and the loan is in good standing;
(b) the member or student accepts a loan from, or has a loan guaranteed by, an officer or director of the client, or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% of its equity securities; or

(c) the member or student has made a loan to, or guaranteed the borrowings of the client that is not a bank or similar financial institution, an officer or director of the client, or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% its equity securities.

86. A loan from, or a loan guaranteed by, from an assurance client that is a bank or a similar financial institution to a person on the engagement team or his or her immediate family member would not create a threat to independence provided the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and is in good standing. Examples of such loans include home mortgages, bank overdrafts, car loans and credit card balances.

87. Similarly, deposits or brokerage accounts of a firm or a person on the engagement team with an assurance client that is a bank, broker or similar financial institution would not create a threat to independence provided the deposit or brokerage account was held under normal commercial terms and conditions.

88. Rules 204.4 (10) and (11) relate to loans and guarantees between a firm and an assurance client. In the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, the provisions of Rules 204.4 (10) and (11) also apply to network firms. In the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client the provisions of Rule 204.4(10), (11) and (12) should be read as applying also to related entities of the client.

C. CLOSE BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS

89. A close business relationship between a firm, a network firm or a person on the engagement team and the assurance client or its management, involving a common commercial or financial interest may create a self-interest or an intimidation threat. The following are examples of such relationships:

(a) having a material financial interest in a joint venture with the client or a controlling owner, director, officer or other individual who performs senior management functions for that client;

(b) arrangements to combine one or more services or products of the firm with one or more services or products of the client and to market the package with reference to both parties; and

(c) arrangements under which either the firm or the client acts as a distributor or marketer of the other’s products or services.

A close business relationship does not include the relationship created by the professional engagement between the client and the member, the firm, or the network firm as the case may be.

90. Rule 204.4(13) provides that a firm or a network firm may not have a close business relationship with an audit or review client or its management unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm or network firm and the client or its management. In the case of an assurance client that is not an audit or review client, a firm may not have a close business relationship with the client or its management unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm and the client or its management, as the case may be.

91. Rule 204.4(13) also provides that a member or student who has a close business relationship with an assurance client (whether audit, review or other) or its management may not be on the engagement team for the client unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the member or student and the client or its management.
92. In the case of an audit or review client, a business relationship involving an interest held by a firm, a network firm or a person on the engagement team or any of that person’s immediate family in a closely held entity in which the client or a director or officer of the client, or any group thereof, also has an interest, does not create threats to independence provided:

- the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm, the network firm and the client;
- the interest held is immaterial to the investor, or group of investors; and
- the interest does not give the investor, or group of investors, the ability to control the closely held entity.

93. The purchase of goods or services from an assurance client by a firm (and, in the case of an audit client, by a network firm) or a person on the engagement team will not generally create a threat to independence, provided the transaction is conducted in the normal course of the client’s business and on an arm’s length basis. However, such a transaction may be of a nature or magnitude such that it does create a self-interest threat. If the threat so created is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- reducing the magnitude of or eliminating the transaction;
- removing the individual involved from the engagement team; or
- discussing the issue with the audit committee.

D. FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS

94. Family and personal relationships between a person on an engagement team and a director, officer or certain employees, depending on their role, of the assurance client may create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. The significance of such a relationship will depend on a number of factors, including the person’s responsibilities on the assurance engagement, the closeness of the relationship and the role of the family member or other individual within the assurance client. Consequently, there are many circumstances that involve a threat to independence that will require evaluation.

95. Rule 204.4(14) provides that a member or a student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client if such person’s immediate family is a director or officer of the client or an employee of the client in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement, or was in such a position during any period covered by the engagement.

96. When a close family member of a person on the engagement team is a director, an officer or an employee of the assurance client in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, a threat to independence may be created. The significance of the threat will depend on factors such as:

- the position the close family member holds with the client; and
- the role of the particular person on the engagement team.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- removing the particular person from the engagement team;
- where possible, restructuring the engagement team’s responsibilities so that the particular person does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the close family member; or
- policies and procedures to empower staff to communicate, without fear of retribution, to senior levels within the firm any issue of independence and objectivity that may concern them.

97. A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat may exist when a director, officer or
employee of an assurance client who is not an immediate or close family member of a
person on the engagement team has a close relationship with a person on the
engagement team, and is in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the
subject matter of the assurance engagement. Those on the engagement team should
identify such individuals, and evaluate the relationship and consult with others in the firm
in accordance with its policies and procedures. The evaluation of the significance of any
such threat and the availability of safeguards appropriate to eliminate it or reduce it to an
acceptable level will include considering matters such as the closeness of the
relationship and the role of the individual within the client.

98. Consideration should be given to whether a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat
exists because of a personal or family relationship between a member of the firm who is
not part of the engagement team and a director, officer or employee of the assurance
client who is in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter
of the assurance engagement. Members of the firm should identify and evaluate the
relationship and consult with others in the firm in accordance with its policies and
procedures. The evaluation of the significance of any threat and the availability of
safeguards appropriate to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level will include
considering matters such as the closeness of the relationship, the interaction of the
member of the firm with the engagement team, the position held within the firm, and the
role of the individual within the client.

99. An inadvertent breach of the principles in this Council Interpretation as they relate to
family and personal relationships would not impair the independence of a member of the
firm, or a firm, when:

- the firm has established policies and procedures that require all members of the firm
to report promptly to the firm any breaches resulting from changes in the employment
status of their immediate or close family members or other personal relationships that
create a threat to independence;
- either the responsibilities of the engagement team are restructured so that the person
on the engagement team does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility
of the person with whom he or she is related or has a personal relationship, or, if that
is not possible, the firm promptly removes that person from the engagement team; and
- additional care is given to reviewing the work of the particular person on the
engagement team.

100. When an inadvertent breach of the principles in this Council should consider whether,
and if so which, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:

- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the
engagement team to review the work done by the person on the engagement
team; or
- excluding that person from any substantive decision-making concerning the
assurance engagement.

Members are reminded that Rule 204.5 requires a member who has a relationship that
is precluded by this Rule to advise in writing a designated partner of the firm of the
interest. Inadvertent breaches are also discussed in paragraph 35 of this Council
Interpretation.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers

101. Rule 204.4(15) provides that a member or a student may not participate on the
engagement team for an audit client that is a reporting issuer if such person’s close family
is in an accounting role or a financial reporting oversight role at the client, or was in such
a position during any period covered by the engagement.
E. EMPLOYMENT WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

General provisions

102. The independence of a firm or a person on the engagement team may be threatened if a director, officer or employee of the assurance client in a position to exert influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement has been on the engagement team or a partner of the firm. Such circumstances may create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat, particularly when a significant connection remains between the individual and his or her former firm.

103. The significance of a threat so created will depend upon the following factors:

- the position the individual has taken at the client and whether the position involves direct or significant influence over the subject matter;
- the amount of any involvement the individual will have with the engagement team;
- the length of time since the individual was on the engagement team or with the firm; and
- the former position of the individual within the engagement team or firm.

The significance of such a threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, available safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- considering the appropriateness or necessity of modifying the plan for the assurance engagement;
- assigning an engagement team to the subsequent assurance engagement that is of sufficient seniority and experience in relation to the individual who has joined the assurance client;
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary; or
- performing an additional quality control review of the assurance engagement by the firm.

In such cases, all of the following safeguards will be necessary to reduce the threat to an acceptable level:

- the particular individual is not entitled to any benefits or payments from the firm unless these are made in accordance with fixed predetermined arrangements. In addition, any amount owed to the individual should not be of such significance to threaten the firm’s independence; and
- the particular individual does not continue to participate or appear to participate in the firm’s business or professional activities.

104. A self-interest threat exists when a person on the engagement team participates in the assurance engagement while knowing, or having reason to believe, that he or she will or may join the client. In all such cases the following safeguards should be applied:

- having firm policies and procedures that require those on the engagement team to notify the firm when entering employment negotiations with the assurance client; and
- removing the person from the engagement team.

In addition, consideration should be given to performing an independent review of any significant judgments made by that person while performing the engagement.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers

105. Notwithstanding the general guidance in paragraphs 102 to 104 of this Council Interpretation, Rule 204.4(16) provides that a firm may not perform an audit engagement for a client that is a reporting issuer if a person who participated in an audit capacity in an
audit of the financial statements of the client is employed in a financial reporting oversight role for the client within a period of one year after the date when the financial statements of the client were filed with the relevant securities regulator or stock exchange. An individual holding one of the following titles will generally be considered to be in a financial reporting oversight role: a member of the board of directors or similar management or governing body, president, chief executive officer, chief operating officer, chief accounting officer, controller, director of internal audit, director of financial reporting, treasurer, and, depending upon the particular facts and circumstances, the general counsel.

106. The term “financial reporting oversight role” means a position in which a person may or does exercise influence over either the contents of the financial statements or anyone who prepares them. When the financial statements of the reporting issuer are consolidated, a financial reporting oversight role can extend to the reporting issuer and its subsidiaries. In determining whether an individual is in a financial reporting oversight role for the reporting issuer, consideration should be given to the position of the individual, the extent of the individual’s involvement in the financial reporting process of the reporting issuer and the impact of the individual’s role of the consolidated financial statements of the reporting issuer.

107. For the purposes of Rule 204.4(16), other than the lead engagement partner and the engagement quality control reviewer, the following persons are not considered to have participated in an audit capacity in an earlier audit:

(a) a person who is employed by the reporting issuer due to an emergency or other unusual situation provided that the entity’s audit committee has determined that the employment of such person is in the interest of the shareholders;
(b) a person who has provided ten or fewer hours of assurance services in the earlier audit;
(c) a person who recommended the compensation of, or who provided direct supervisory, management or oversight of, the lead engagement partner in connection with the performance of the earlier audit, including those at all successively senior levels above the lead engagement partner through to the firm’s chief executive; and
(d) a person who provided quality control for the audit engagement.

108. An individual may have fully complied with Rule 204.4(16) in accepting employment with an entity, and subsequently thereto, the entity merged with or was acquired by another entity resulting in that individual having a financial reporting oversight role of a combined entity which is audited by the firm in which the individual was previously an employee or a partner. In such a circumstance, unless the employment offer was accepted in contemplation of the merger or acquisition, the individual or the entity could not be expected to know that the employment decision could result in a threat to independence. In all such cases the safeguard of informing the audit committee should be applied.

109. For the purposes of Rule 204.4(16) audit procedures are deemed to have commenced for the current audit engagement period on the day after the financial statements for the previous period are filed with the relevant securities regulator or stock exchange.

F. RECENT SERVICE WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

110. A self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat may exist when a former officer, director or employee of an assurance client becomes a part of the engagement team for that client.

111. Rule 204.4(17) provides that a member or a student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client if such person served as an officer or director of the client or had been an employee thereof in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement during the period covered by the
112. If, prior to the period covered by an assurance report, a person on the engagement team served as an officer or on the board of directors of the assurance client, or had been an employee in a position to exert direct and significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat may exist. For example, such a threat will exist if a decision made or work performed by that individual in the prior period, while employed by the client, is to be evaluated in the current period as part of the assurance engagement. The significance of the threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the position the individual held with the client;
- the length of time since the individual left the client; and
- the role of the individual on the engagement team.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work of the particular person or advise as necessary; or
- discussing the issue with the audit committee.

G. SERVING AS AN OFFICER OR A MEMBER OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

113. Rule 204.4(18) provides that a member of a firm may not serve as an officer or director for an assurance client. In the case of an audit or review client, this prohibition is extended to related entities of the client and members of network firms by Rule 204.4(19). However, a partner or employee of a network firm may serve as company secretary for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer where permitted by local law, professional rules or practice, and the duties and functions undertaken are limited to those of a routine and formal administrative nature.

Company secretary

114. The position of company secretary has different implications in different jurisdictions. The duties of company secretary may range from administrative duties such as personnel management and the maintenance of company records and registers, to duties as diverse as ensuring that the company complies with regulations or providing advice on corporate governance matters. Generally this position is seen to imply a close degree of association with the entity and may create self-review and advocacy threats.

115. If a partner or employee of a network firm serves as company secretary for an audit or review client, the self-review and advocacy threats created would generally be so significant that safeguards are unlikely to be available to reduce the threats to an acceptable level. However, when the practice of acting as company secretary is specifically permitted under local law, professional rules or practice, the duties and functions undertaken should be limited to those of a routine and formal administrative nature such as the preparation of minutes and maintenance of statutory returns.

116. Routine administrative services to support a company secretarial function or advisory work in relation to company secretarial administration matters is generally not perceived to impair independence, provided client management makes all relevant decisions.

H. RELIGIOUS ORGANIZATIONS

117. A threat to independence is ordinarily not created when a person on the engagement team, or any of the person’s immediate or close family, belongs to a religious organization that is an assurance client provided the person on the engagement team, or
the immediate or close family member:
(a) does not serve on the religious organization’s governing body; and
(b) does not have the right or responsibility to exercise significant influence over the
financial or accounting policies of the religious organization or any of its associates.

I. SOCIAL CLUBS

118. Notwithstanding Rules 204.1 to 204.4, a threat to independence is ordinarily not created
when a person on the engagement team, or an immediate or close family member of the
engagement team, holds qualifying shares in a social club, such as a golf club, curling
club, co-operative or similar organization, where the shareholding is a prerequisite of club
membership, provided:
(a) the assets of the organization cannot by virtue of the organization’s by-laws be
distributed to the individual club members other than in circumstances of forced
liquidation or expropriation, unless there is a written undertaking with the organization
to forfeit entitlement to such distributed assets;
(b) neither the person on the engagement team nor the immediate or close family
member:
   (i) serves on the governing body or as an officer of the organization;
   (ii) has the right or responsibility to exercise significant influence over the financial or
accounting policies of the organization or any of its associates; or
   (iii) exercises any right derived from membership to vote at meetings of the
organization; and
(c) the club member cannot dispose of the membership for gain.

J. LONG ASSOCIATION OF SENIOR PERSONNEL WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

119. The use of the same senior personnel on the engagement team on an assurance
engagement over a long period of time may create a familiarity threat. The significance of
such a threat will depend upon factors such as:
- the length of time that the particular individual has been on the engagement team;
- the role of that individual on the engagement team;
- the structure of the firm; and
- the nature of the assurance engagement including the complexity of the subject
matter and degree of professional judgment needed.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly
insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such
safeguards might include:
- discussing the matter with the audit committee;
- replacing the senior personnel on the engagement team;
- involving an additional member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the
engagement team to review the work done by the particular individual, or advise as
necessary;
- the member or firm is subject to external practice inspection; or
- an independent internal quality review of the assurance work performed by a member
of the firm who was not part of the engagement team.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers

120 Rule 204.4(20)(a)(i) provides that a member may not continue as the lead engagement
partner, or the engagement quality control reviewer, for an audit client that is a reporting
issuer for more than seven years in total and shall not resume or assume either such role
until five years have elapsed since the member ceased to be the lead engagement
partner or the engagement quality control reviewer.
120A Rule 204.4(20)(b)(i) provides that a member, who is a partner other than the lead engagement partner or the engagement quality control reviewer on the engagement team, providing, during the engagement period, more than ten hours of assurance services in connection with the annual financial statements or interim financial information of the reporting issuer or is a subsidiary engagement partner may not provide such services for a period of more than seven years in total and shall not resume providing such services until two years have elapsed since the member ceased to provide such services.

120B In the case a reporting issuer that is mutual fund Rules 204.4(20)(a)(ii) and (b)(ii) extend the partner rotation requirements and restrictions described above to mutual funds within the same mutual fund complex, as defined.

120C The provisions in Rule 204.4(20)(b) do not apply to those “specialty” and “technical” partners who consult with others on the engagement team regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events, including taxation matters. In addition, the provisions do not apply to those partners who, subsequent to the issuance of the audit report, provide quality control for the engagement. Such partners typically have a low level of involvement with senior management as well as a relatively low level responsibility for overall presentation in the financial statements.

121. [ Deleted ]

122. When an audit client becomes a reporting issuer, the length of time the lead engagement partner has served in that capacity should be considered in determining when the partner must be replaced on the engagement team. However, if the lead engagement partner has served in that capacity for five or more fiscal years at the time the client becomes a reporting issuer, such person may continue in that capacity for two more fiscal years before being replaced as lead engagement partner.

K. AUDIT COMMITTEE PRIOR APPROVAL OF SERVICES TO A REPORTING ISSUER AUDIT CLIENT

123. Rule 204.4(21) provides that a member or firm may not provide a service to a reporting issuer, that is an audit client, or to a subsidiary thereof, unless the audit committee of the client pre-approves such service. The requirement applies to all audit and non-audit services. For the purpose of Rule 204.4(21) the audit committee recommendation to the entity's board of directors that the particular audit firm be the entity's auditor will be considered to be the approval of the audit service. Subject to paragraph 125, all non-audit services for the reporting issuer and its subsidiaries must be specifically pre-approved by the audit committee.

124. The audit committee may establish policies and procedures for pre-approval provided that they are detailed as to the particular services and designed to safeguard the independence of the member and the firm. For example, one or more audit committee members who are independent board directors may pre-approve the service provided decisions made by the designated audit committee members are reported to the full audit committee.

125. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(21), audit committee pre-approval of services other than assurance services provided to an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a subsidiary of the client, is not required where all such services that have not been pre-approved:

(a) do not represent more than five per cent of total revenues paid by the audit client to the member, the firm and network firms in the fiscal year in which the services are provided;
(b) were not recognized as non-audit services at the time of the engagement; and
(c) are promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee and the audit committee or one or more designated representatives approves the services prior to the completion of the audit.

Section CI [38]       June 2014
For the purposes of Rule 204.4(21) audit services include all those services performed to discharge responsibilities to provide an opinion on the financial statements of the reporting issuer. For example, in connection with some audit engagements, a tax partner may be involved in reviewing the tax accrual of the client. Since it is a necessary part of the audit process, the activity constitutes an audit service. Similarly, complex accounting issues may require consultation with a national office technical partner to reach an audit judgment. That consultation, being a necessary part of the audit process, also constitutes an audit service, and as such will be considered to have been pre-approved by the audit committee whether or not the firm charges separately for it. These examples contrast with a situation where a client is evaluating a proposed transaction and requests the member, the firm or a network firm to evaluate it and, after research and consultation, the member, firm or network firm provides an answer to the client and bills for those services. Such services would not be considered to be audit services and, therefore, will not be considered to have been pre-approved with the audit service.

L. PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

General provisions

127. Firms have traditionally provided to their assurance clients a range of other services that are consistent with their skills and expertise. The provision of a service not referred to in Rule 204.1 may, however, create a self-interest, self-review or advocacy threat to the independence of the member or firm. Consequently, before a firm accepts an engagement to provide a non-assurance service to an assurance client, it should evaluate the significance of any threat created by providing the service. When such a threat is other than clearly insignificant, the non-assurance engagement should be declined unless appropriate safeguards can be applied to eliminate the threat or threats or reduce them to an acceptable level.

128. Subject to any specific prohibition in these rules to the contrary, a firm or a member of a firm may provide a non-assurance service to an assurance client provided that any threats to independence have been reduced to an acceptable level by safeguards, such as:

- policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm from making management decisions for the client, or assuming responsibility for such decisions;
- discussing independence issues related to the provision of non-assurance services with the audit committee;
- policies within the assurance client regarding the oversight responsibility for provision of non-assurance services by the firm;
- involving another member of the firm who is not on the engagement team to advise on any impact of the non-assurance engagement on the independence of the persons on the engagement team and the firm;
- involving a professional colleague from outside of the firm to provide assurance on a discrete aspect of the assurance engagement;
- obtaining the client’s acknowledgement of responsibility for the results of the work performed by the firm;
- disclosing to the audit committee the nature of the engagement and extent of fees charged; or
- arranging that the members of the firm providing the non-assurance service do not participate on the engagement team.

129. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the provision of certain non-assurance services to an audit or review client may create a threat to independence so significant that no safeguard will eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level. However, the provision of such a service to a related entity or division or the provision of a service that
relates to a discrete financial statement item of the audit client may be permissible if all threats to the firm’s independence have been reduced to an acceptable level by:

- arranging for that related entity, division or discrete financial statement item to be audited by another firm that is not a network firm; or
- arranging for another firm that is not a network firm to re-perform the non-assurance service.

130. Rule 204.4(22) provides that, during the engagement period, a member of a firm may not make management decisions or perform management functions for an assurance client. The Rule further provides that in the case of an audit or review client a member of the firm or a network firm shall not make management decisions or perform management functions for the client during either the engagement period or the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review. Rule 204.4(22) also provides that in the case of an audit client that is a reporting issuer, a member of the firm or a network firm shall not make management decisions or perform management functions for a related entity of the client. Activities that would constitute a management decision or function include:

(a) authorizing, approving, executing or consummating a transaction;
(b) having or exercising authority on behalf of the client;
(c) determining which recommendation of the member or the firm should be implemented; or
(d) reporting in a management role to those charged with governance of the client.

131. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(22) the independence of a member or a firm would not be impaired by the provision of services to assess the effectiveness of the internal control of an assurance client and to recommend improvements in the design and implementation of internal control and risk management control. Obtaining an understanding of the client’s internal control is required by generally accepted auditing standards. Members often become involved in diagnosing, assessing and recommending to management ways in which internal control can be improved or strengthened.

132. The lending of staff by a firm or network firm to an audit or review client may create a self-review threat when a person so loaned is in a position to influence the preparation of the client’s financial statements. In practice, such assistance may be given but only on the understanding that client approval is obtained for the results of the service and that the person on loan will not be involved in:

- making management decisions for the client;
- approving or signing agreements or other similar client documents; or
- exercising discretionary authority to commit the client.

In such situations the circumstances should be carefully analyzed to identify any threat to independence created and to determine whether additional safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

133. Rules 204.4(24) to (28) set out non-audit services that may not be provided during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or during the engagement period to an audit client that is a reporting issuer unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of any such service will not be subject to audit procedures during the audit of the client’s financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of such services will be subject to audit procedures. Materiality is not an appropriate basis upon which to overcome this presumption. For example, determining whether a subsidiary, division or other unit of the consolidated entity is material is a matter of audit judgment. Therefore, the determination of whether to apply detailed audit procedures to a unit of a consolidated entity is, in itself,
Preparation of accounting records and financial statements

General provisions

134. It is the responsibility of management to ensure that accounting records are kept and financial statements are prepared, although in discharging its responsibility management may request a member or firm to provide assistance.

135. Assisting an audit or review client in matters such as preparing accounting records or financial statements will create a self-review threat when the financial statements are subsequently audited or reviewed by the member or firm. The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level.

136. Rule 204.4(23) provides that a member, or a member of a firm or network firm, may not perform any of the following activities for an entity, including a reporting issuer, that is an audit or review client:

(a) preparing, or changing a journal entry, determining or changing an account code, or a classification for a transaction or preparing or changing another accounting record without obtaining the approval of management of the entity;

(b) preparing or changing a source document or originating data in respect of any transaction undertaken or entered into by the entity.

137. A source document is an initial recording or original evidence of a transaction. Examples of source documents are purchase orders, payroll time cards, customer orders, invoices, disbursement approvals, signed cheques and written contracts. Source documents are often followed by the creation of additional records and reports, such as trial balances, account reconciliations and aged account receivable listings, which do not constitute source documents or initial recordings. Source documents may also be preceded by documents containing calculations and advice, such as bonus calculations for tax purposes, ceiling test calculations in the oil and gas industry and sample wording for clauses in a contract that will be prepared by the client's lawyers. The creation of such additional records, reports and documents would not constitute the creation of source documents.

138. Notwithstanding Rules 204.4(23) and (24), the financial statement audit and review process involves extensive dialogue between persons on the engagement team and management of the audit or review client. During this process, management will often request and receive input regarding such matters as accounting principles and financial statement disclosure, the appropriateness of controls and the methods used in determining the stated amounts of assets and liabilities. The provision of technical assistance of this nature for an audit or review client is an appropriate method of promoting the fair presentation of the financial statements. The provision of such advice, per se, does not generally threaten the member's or the firm's independence. Other services that are usually a part of the audit or review process and that do not, under normal circumstances, threaten independence include:

- assisting a client in resolving account reconciliation problems;
- analyzing and accumulating information for regulatory reporting;
- assisting in the preparation of consolidated financial statements (including assisting in the translation of local statutory accounts to comply with group accounting policies and transition to a different reporting framework such as International Accounting Standards);
- assisting the drafting of disclosure items;
- proposing adjusting journal entries; and
providing assistance and advice in the preparation of local statutory accounts of subsidiary entities.

139. A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm assists in the preparation of subject matter other than financial statements and subsequently provides assurance thereon. For example, a self-review threat will exist if a member or firm develops and prepares prospective financial information and subsequently provides assurance on it. Consequently, a member or firm should evaluate the significance of any self-review threat created by the provision of such a service. If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers

140. Subject to Rule 204.4(23) a member, firm or network firm may provide an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer with accounting and bookkeeping services provided that any resulting self-review threat so created is reduced to an acceptable level. Examples of such services include:

- recording transactions for which the client has determined or approved the appropriate account classification;
- posting transactions to the client’s general ledger;
- preparing financial statements;
- drafting notes to the financial statements;
- posting journal entries to the trial balance;
- performing payroll services which do not involve having custody of client assets; and
- preparing tax receipts for charitable donations or tax information returns, such as T4 slips.

Client approval of journal entries

141. A member, firm or network firm may prepare journal entries for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer provided management approves and takes responsibility for such journal entries. In obtaining this approval, the member, firm or network firm may choose to obtain approval for each journal entry or, alternatively, to obtain approval following a thorough review of the completed financial statements with management. This approval may also be obtained through the management representation letter.

Evaluation of significance of threats

142. The significance of a threat created by providing accounting and bookkeeping services to an auditor review client that is not a reporting issuer should be evaluated. The significance of such a threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the degree of involvement of the member or firm;
- the complexity of the transactions to be accounted for; and
- the extent of professional judgment required in selecting the appropriate accounting treatment.

If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- making arrangements so that such services are not performed by a person on the engagement team;
- requiring the client to create the source data for the accounting entries;
- requiring the client to develop the underlying assumptions;
- obtaining the views of another professional accountant;
- arranging for another firm to review a significant accounting treatment; or
• discussing a significant accounting treatment with the Director of Professional Standards or other Institute staff member.

**Complex transactions**

143. Preparing the journal entries for a complex transaction would likely create a self-review threat the significance of which could only be reduced to an acceptable level by applying safeguards that involve consultation with others, for example by:

• obtaining the views of another professional accountant;
• arranging for another firm to review a significant accounting treatment; or
• discussing the proposed accounting treatment with the Director of Professional Standards or other Institute staff member.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

144. Rule 204.4(24) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or of a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of these services will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. Bookkeeping and other such services include:

(a) maintaining or preparing the entity’s, or a related entity’s, accounting records
(b) preparing the financial statements on which the audit report is provided or that form the basis of the financial statements on which the audit report is provided; and
(c) preparing or originating source data underlying such financial statements.

In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the bookkeeping or other services will be subject to audit procedures.

**Valuation services**

**General provisions**

145. A valuation service involves the making of assumptions with respect to future events and the application of certain methodologies and techniques, in order to compute or provide an opinion with respect to a specific value or range of values, for a business as a whole, an intangible or tangible asset or a liability.

**Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers**

146. Performing a valuation service for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer will create a self-review threat when the valuation resulting from the service is incorporated into the client’s financial statements. The significance of such a threat should be evaluated. The significance will depend on factors such as:

• the materiality of the results of the valuation service;
• the extent of the client’s knowledge, experience and ability to evaluate the issues concerned, and the extent of the client’s involvement in determining and approving significant matters of judgment;
• the degree to which established methodologies and professional guidelines are applied when performing the particular valuation service;
• the degree of subjectivity inherent in the item concerned where the valuation involves standard or established methodologies;
• the reliability and extent of the underlying data;
• the degree of dependence on future events of a nature which could create significant volatility in the amounts involved; and
the extent and clarity of the financial statement disclosures. If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- involving an additional professional accountant who was not a member of the engagement team to review the valuation work or otherwise advise as necessary;
- confirming with the client its understanding of the underlying assumptions of the valuation and the methodology to be used and obtaining approval for their use;
- obtaining the client’s acknowledgement of responsibility for the results of the valuation work performed by the firm or network firm; or
- arranging that members of the firm or network firm providing such services do not participate on the engagement team.

147. Performing a valuation service for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer involving matters that are material to the entity’s financial statements and involving a significant degree of subjectivity would likely create a self-review threat. The significance of such a threat could only be reduced to an acceptable level by applying safeguards that involve consultation with others, such as another professional accountant or valuation specialist.

148. When a member, firm or network firm performs a valuation service for an audit or review client for the purposes of making a filing with a taxation authority, computing an amount of tax due by the client, or tax planning, no significant threat to independence ordinarily exists because such valuations are generally subject to the safeguard of external review by the taxation authority.

149. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(25), the independence of a member or a firm will not be impaired when:

- the firm’s valuation specialist reviews the work of an audit or review client or a specialist employed by the client, provided the client or the client’s specialist supplies the technical expertise that the client uses in determining the required amounts recorded in the financial statements. In such circumstances there will be no self-review threat because a client’s management or a third-party is the source of the financial information subject to audit; or
- the valuation service is provided for non-financial reporting purposes, for example, transfer pricing studies or other tax-only purposes.

150. When a member or firm performs a valuation that forms part of the subject matter of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, the firm should consider whether there is a self-review threat. If such a threat exists, and it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers

151. Rule 204.4(25) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide a valuation service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the valuation service will be subject to audit procedures.

Provision of actuarial services to a reporting issuer audit client

152. Rule 204.4(26) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member
of the firm or a network firm, may not perform an actuarial service for an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the actuarial service will be subject to audit procedures.

153. For the purposes of Rule 204.4(26), actuarial services include the determination of an amount to be recorded in the client’s financial statements and related accounts, except for: services that involve assisting the client in understanding the methods, models, assumptions and inputs used in determining such amounts; and advising management on the appropriate actuarial methods and assumptions that will be used in the actuarial valuations. In addition, the firm may use its own actuary to assist in conducting the audit if the client’s actuary or a third-party actuary provides management with its actuarial capabilities.

**Provision of internal audit services to an audit or review client**

**General provisions**

154. A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm provides internal audit services to an audit or review client. Such services may comprise an extension of the firm’s audit service beyond the requirements of generally accepted auditing standards, assistance in the performance of the client’s internal audit activities, or outsourcing of the activities. In evaluating any threat to independence, the nature of the service should be considered.

155. Services involving an extension of the procedures required to conduct an audit or review in accordance with the *CICA Handbook — Assurance* will not be considered to impair independence with respect to an audit or review client provided that a member of the firm or network firm does not act or appear to act in the capacity of the client’s management.

156. During the course of an audit or review engagement the engagement team considers the client’s internal control and, as a result, may make recommendations for its improvement. This is part of an audit or review engagement and is not considered to be an internal audit service.

157. For the purposes of Rule 204.4 and this Council Interpretation, internal audit services do not include operational internal audit services unrelated to the internal accounting controls, financial systems or financial statements.

158. Safeguards that should be applied in all circumstances to reduce any threats created by performing internal audit services for an audit or review client to an acceptable level include ensuring that:

- the client is responsible for internal audit activities and acknowledges in writing, to the firm and the audit committee, its responsibility for establishing, maintaining and monitoring the system of internal controls;
- the client designates a competent employee, preferably within senior management, to be responsible for internal audit activities;
- the client or the audit committee approves the scope, risk and frequency of internal audit work;
- the client is responsible for evaluating and determining which recommendations of the firm should be implemented;
- the client evaluates the adequacy of the internal audit procedures performed and the findings resulting from the performance of those procedures by, for example, obtaining and acting on reports from the member, firm or network firm; and
- the findings and recommendations resulting from the internal audit services performed by the member, firm or network firm are reported appropriately to the audit committee.
159. Consideration should also be given to whether the provision of internal audit services to an audit or review client should be provided only by a member or members of the firm not involved in the audit or review engagement and with different reporting lines within the firm.

160. Performing a significant portion of the audit or review client’s internal audit activities may create a self-review threat and a member, firm or network firm should consider that possibility and proceed with caution before taking on such an activity.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

161. Rule 204.4(27) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide an internal audit service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a related entity, that relates to the client’s, or the related entity’s, internal accounting controls, financial systems or financial statements, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the internal audit service will be subject to audit procedures.

162. Rule 204.4(27) does not prohibit the member, firm or network firm from providing a nonrecurring service to evaluate a discrete item or program, if the service is not in substance the outsourcing of an internal audit function. For example, the member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm of a network firm, may conduct a nonrecurring specified auditing procedures engagement related to the internal control of an audit client that is a reporting issuer.

**Provision of IT system services to an audit or review client**

**General provisions**

163. The provision of services by a member, firm or network firm to an audit or review client that involve the design or implementation of financial information technology systems that are, or will be, used to generate information forming part of the client’s financial statements may create a self-review threat.

**Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers**

164. The provision of services by a member, firm or network firm to an audit or review client that involve both the design and the implementation of such financial information technology systems would create a self-review threat that is likely to be too significant to allow the provision of such services to an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer, unless appropriate safeguards are put in place ensuring that:

- the client acknowledges in writing to the firm and the audit committee its responsibility for establishing and monitoring a system of internal controls;
- the client designates a competent employee, preferably within senior management, with the responsibility to make all management decisions with respect to the design and implementation of the hardware or software system;
- the client makes all management decisions with respect to the design and implementation process;
- the client evaluates the adequacy and results of the design and implementation of the system; and
- the client is responsible for the operation of the system (hardware or software) and the data used or generated by the system.

165. Consideration should also be given to whether such services should be provided only by members of the firm who are not part of the engagement team with different reporting
lines within the firm.

166. The provision of services by a member, firm or network firm to an audit or review client that involve either the design or the implementation of financial information technology systems that are used to generate information forming part of the client’s financial statements may also create a self-review threat. The significance of any threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level.

167. The provision of services to an audit or review client by a member, firm or network firm in connection with the assessment, design and implementation of internal accounting controls and risk management controls is not considered to create a threat to independence provided that members of the firm or network firm do not perform management functions for the client.

168. Recommending or installing pre-packaged financial information technology software for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer generally will not create a threat to independence.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

169. Rule 204.4(28) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not design or implement a financial information system for an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or for a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of such service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the client’s financial statements. Such services involve:

(a) directly or indirectly operating, or supervising the operation of, the entity’s, or a related entity’s, information system;

(b) designing or implementing a hardware or software system that aggregates source data underlying the financial statements or generates information that is significant to the entity’s, or a related entity’s, financial statements or other financial information systems taken as a whole; or

(c) directly or indirectly managing the entity’s, or a related entity’s, local area network. In determining whether it is reasonable to conclude that the results of such service will not be subject to audit procedures, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the financial information systems design and implementation service will be subject to audit procedures.

170. Information will be considered to be significant if it is reasonably likely to be material to the financial statements. Since materiality determinations may not be complete before the financial statements are prepared, the audit client and the member or firm should evaluate the general nature of the information as well as system output during the period of the audit engagement.

171. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(28), a member, a firm or a network firm may:

- design or implement a hardware or software system that is unrelated to the financial statements or accounting records of the reporting issuer, or a related entity;
- as part of the audit, or another assurance engagement, evaluate and make recommendations to management on the internal control of a system as it is being designed, implemented or operated; or
- make recommendations on internal control matters to management or other service provider in conjunction with the design and installation of a system by another service provider.
Provision of litigation support or expert services to an audit or review client

General provisions

172. Litigation support services include such activities as acting as an expert witness, calculating estimated damages or other amounts that might become receivable or payable as the result of litigation or other legal dispute, and assistance with document management and retrieval in relation to a legal dispute or litigation.

173. A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm provides to an audit or review client litigation support services that include the estimation of the possible outcome of a dispute or litigation and thereby affects the amounts or disclosures to be reflected in the client’s financial statements. The significance of any such threat will depend upon factors such as:
- the nature of the engagement;
- the materiality of the amounts involved; and
- the degree of subjectivity inherent in the matter concerned.

The member or firm should evaluate the significance of any threat so created and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:
- policies and, procedures to prohibit individuals who assist the client from making management decisions on the client’s behalf;
- using a member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team to perform the litigation support service; or
- the involvement of others, such as independent specialists.

If adequate safeguards are not available to reduce a threat to an acceptable level the member, firm or network firm should decline the engagement.

Provision of expert services to a reporting issuer audit client

174. Rule 204.4(29) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide an expert opinion or other expert service for an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or for a related entity, or for a legal representative thereof. This rule prohibits a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, from performing an engagement to provide specialized knowledge, experience or expertise to advocate or support the audit client’s positions, or the positions of a related entity, in an adversarial or similar proceeding such as an investigation, a litigation matter, or a legislative or administrative tribunal.

175. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(29), a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may be engaged by an audit committee of an audit client that is a reporting issuer to assist it in fulfilling its responsibilities to conduct its own investigation of a potential accounting impropriety. For example, if the audit committee is concerned about the accuracy of the inventory records at a subsidiary, it may engage the member, the firm or the network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, to conduct a thorough inspection and analysis of these records, the physical inventory at the subsidiary and related matters without impairing independence. This type of engagement may include forensic or other fact-finding work that results in the issuance of a report to the audit client. It will generally require performing procedures that are consistent with, but more detailed or more comprehensive than, those required by generally accepted auditing standards.

176. In an investigation or proceeding for an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or for a related entity, the member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may provide an account or testimony with respect to a matter of fact, such as
describing the work performed by the member's firm or the predecessor auditor. The member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or network firm, may explain the positions taken or the conclusions reached during the performance of any service provided for the reporting issuer audit client.

Legal services to an audit or review client

**General provisions**

177. A legal service refers to any service that may only be provided by a person licensed, admitted, or otherwise qualified to practice law in the jurisdiction in which the service is provided. Legal services encompass a wide and varied range of corporate and commercial services, including contract support, conduct of litigation, mergers and acquisition advice and support and the provision of assistance to client’s internal legal departments. For the purposes of Rule 204.4 legal services do not include those taxation services that may be provided by a person who is not admitted to the practice of law in the jurisdiction.

178. Threats to independence created by the provision of legal services to an audit or review client should be considered based on:

- the nature of the service to be provided (for example, advocacy as opposed to other legal services);
- whether the service provider is separate from the engagement team; and
- the materiality of any pertinent matter in relation to the client’s financial statements.

179. The provision of a legal service which involves matters that would not be expected to have a material effect on the client’s financial statements is not considered to create an unacceptable threat to independence with respect to that client.

180. The provision of legal services to support an audit or review client in the execution of a transaction (e.g., contract support, legal advice, legal due diligence and restructuring) may create a self-review threat. The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- using a member of the firm who is not on the engagement team to provide the service;
- ensuring the member of the firm does not make a management decision for the client;
- ensuring the client makes the ultimate decision in relation to the advice provided; and
- ensuring the service involves the execution of what has been decided by the client in relation to the transaction.

181. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Rule 204.4(30) provides that a member, firm or network firm may not, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review or the engagement period, provide a legal service to an audit or review client in the resolution of a dispute or litigation in circumstances where the matters in dispute or subject to litigation are material in relation to the client’s financial statements.

182. The provision of a legal service to assist an audit or review client in the resolution of a dispute or litigation may create an advocacy or self-review threat. When a member, firm or network firm is asked to act in an advocacy role for the client in the resolution of a dispute or litigation in circumstances where the amounts involved are not material to the client’s financial statements, the significance of any resulting threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm or network firm from assisting the client in making management decisions on behalf of the client; or
- using members of the firm who are not on the engagement team to perform the particular legal service.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

183. **Rule 204.4(31)** provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide a legal service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a related entity.

**Human resource services for an assurance client**

**General provisions**

184. The recruitment of managers, executives or directors for an assurance client, where the person recruited will be in a position to affect the subject matter of the assurance engagement, may create a current or future self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. The significance of such a threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the role of the person to be recruited; and
- the nature of the assistance sought.

The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. In all cases, the firm should not make management decisions and the client should make the hiring decision.

**Audit clients that are reporting issuers**

185. **Rule 204.4(32)** provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide any of the following services to an audit client that is a reporting issuer, or to a related entity:

(a) searching for or seeking out prospective candidates for management, executive, or director positions;
(b) engaging in psychological testing, or other formal testing or evaluation programs;
(c) undertaking reference checks of prospective candidates for an executive or director position;
(d) acting as a negotiator or mediator on the entity’s behalf with respect to employees or future employees with respect to any condition of employment, including position, status or title, compensation, or fringe benefits; or
(e) recommending or advising the entity to hire a specific candidate for a specific job.

Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(32) a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm may, upon request of the audit client, interview candidates and advise the client on the candidate’s competence for financial accounting, administrative or control positions.

**Corporate finance and similar activities**

186. **Rule 204.4(33)** provides that, during the engagement period, a member or firm, or a member of the firm, may not provide any of the following services to an assurance client:

(a) promoting, dealing in or underwriting the client’s securities;
(b) making investment decisions on behalf of the client or otherwise having discretionary authority over the client’s investments;
(c) executing a transaction to buy or sell the client’s investments; or
(d) having custody of assets of the client, including taking temporary possession of securities purchased by the client.
The Rule further provides that in the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a network firm or a member of a network firm shall not provide such services to the client. It also provides that in the case of an audit client that is a reporting issuer, the firm, a network firm, or a member of the firm or network firm shall not provide such services to a related entity.

187. Other corporate finance services may create an advocacy or self-review threat that may be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Examples of such services include: assisting a client in developing corporate strategies; assisting a client in obtaining bank financing by explaining the financial statements to the bank; assisting in identifying or introducing a client to possible sources of capital that meet the client specifications or criteria; and providing structuring advice and assisting a client in analyzing the accounting effects of proposed transactions. The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm from making management decisions on behalf of the client; and
- using members of the firm not part of the engagement team to provide the services.

**Provision of taxation services to an audit or review client**

188. Members and firms have historically provided a broad range of tax services to their audit and review clients, including compliance, planning, provision of formal taxation opinions and assistance in the resolution of tax disputes. Taxation services are seen to be unique among non-assurance services for several reasons. Detailed tax laws must be consistently applied, and taxation authorities have discretion to audit any tax filing. Accordingly such engagements are generally not seen to create threats to independence that are not adequately offset by available safeguards.

189. There are, however, some taxation services which, when provided to an audit or review client, may impair the independence of the member or firm. An example is when a member, a firm or a network firm represents an audit or review client before a court having jurisdiction to deal with tax matters.

**M. FEES AND PRICING**

**Fees — Relative size**

190. When the total fees generated from an assurance client represent a significant proportion of a member’s or firm’s total fees, the financial dependence on that about losing the client, may create a self-interest threat. The significance of the threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the structure of the firm; and
- whether the member or firm is well established in practice.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- taking steps to reduce the dependency on the client;
- discussing the extent and nature of fees with the audit committee;
- having firm policies and procedures to monitor and implement quality control of assurance engagements;
- involving another member of the firm who is not on the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary;
- arranging for external quality control reviews; and
• consulting a third party, such as a professional regulatory body or a professional colleague who is not a member of the firm.

Fees — Overdue

191. A self-interest threat may exist if fees due from an assurance client for professional services remain unpaid for a long time, especially if a significant portion is not paid before the issue of the assurance report for the following year. Generally the payment of such fees should be required before that report is issued. The following safeguards may be applicable:

• discussing the level of outstanding fees with the audit committee; and
• involving another member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team, or a professional colleague who is not a member of the firm, to provide advice or review the work performed.

Members are cautioned that the overdue fees might create the same threats to independence as a loan to the client. Therefore, members should consider whether, because of the significance of such threats, it is appropriate for the firm to retain the client.

Pricing

192. Rule 204.4(34) provides that a member or firm may not provide an assurance service at a fee level that the member or firm knows is significantly lower than that charged by the predecessor member or firm, or contained in other proposals for the engagement, unless the member or firm can demonstrate that the engagement will be performed properly by qualified staff and in accordance with all applicable professional standards.

N. COMPENSATION OF AUDIT PARTNERS

193. Compensating an audit partner for selling non-assurance services to an audit or review client of that partner may create a self-interest threat. The significance of the threat will depend on such factors as:

• the structure of the firm;
• the size of the fee for the assurance service; and
• the size of the fee for the non-assurance service.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

• discussing the nature and extent of the fees with the audit committee;
• having firm policies and procedures to monitor and implement quality control of assurance engagements;
• involving another member of the firm who is not a member of the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary; and
• being subject to external practice inspection.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers

194. Rule 204.4(35) provides that a member who is an audit partner of a firm with five or more audit clients that are reporting issuers or ten or more partners, may not earn or receive compensation based on the partner procuring engagements from a reporting issuer audit client of the partner to provide any product or service other than an assurance service. Rule 204.4(35) does not apply to partners who are not “audit partners” as defined.

195. The prohibition from compensating an audit partner for procuring or selling non-assurance services is not extended to compensation for performing such services and does not preclude an audit partner from sharing in the profits of the audit practice and the profits of the firm. An audit partner’s evaluation may take into account a number of
factors directly or indirectly related to selling services to an audit client that is a reporting issuer. For example, an audit partner may be evaluated on the complexity of his or her engagements, the overall management of the relationship with the client including the provision of non-audit services, and the attainment of specific sales goals.

O. CONTINGENT FEES

196. Members and firms are referred to Rule 215 and the related Council Interpretation.

P. GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

197. Rule 204.4(36) provides that a firm, or a member or a student who is part of an engagement team for an assurance client, may not accept a gift or hospitality, including a product or service discount, from the client unless the gift or hospitality is clearly insignificant to the firm or person as the case may be.

Q. ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION

198. Actual, threatened or prospective litigation between a firm or a member of an engagement team and the assurance client or a shareholder or creditor of the client may create a self-interest or intimidation threat. The relationship between client management and persons on the engagement team should be characterized by complete candour and full disclosure regarding all aspects of the client’s business operations and all matters relevant to the client’s financial statements. The firm and the client’s management may be placed in adversarial positions by actual, threatened or prospective litigation, which could impair complete candour and full disclosure, and in this, or other ways, the firm may face a self-interest or intimidation threat. The significance of the threat will depend upon such factors as:

- the materiality of the litigation;
- the nature of the assurance engagement;
- the stage of the litigation; and
- whether the litigation relates to a prior assurance engagement.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- disclosing to the audit committee the extent and nature of the litigation;
- removing from the engagement team any person involved in the litigation; and
- involving an additional member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary.

If such safeguards do not reduce the threat to an acceptable level, the only appropriate actions is for the member or firm to withdraw from, or refuse to accept, the assurance engagement.

199. Members are cautioned that actual litigation often results in a conflict of interest between the client and the member or firm which will preclude the member or firm from continuing to provide professional services to the client. Threatened or prospective litigation can have the same result. When faced with threatened, prospective or actual litigation, members and firms should refer to Rule 210 and the related Council Interpretation, and consult with their legal counsel, to determine whether they can continue to provide professional services to the client and, if so, whether there are particular arrangements which should be made with the client.

CI 204.6 MEMBERS TO ENSURE COMPLIANCE BY PERSONS ASSOCIATED WITH THE FIRM

Members of the firm include all those persons who are associated with the firm in carrying out its activities. Members of the firm, including employees, who are not subject to the Institute's
Rules of Professional Conduct could have an interest or relationship or provide a service that would result in the firm being prohibited from performing a particular engagement. Rule 204.6 requires a member who is a partner or proprietor of a firm to ensure that the firm and all members of the firm, including those who are not members of the Institute, do not have a relationship or interest, do not perform a service and remain free of any influence that would preclude the firm from performing the engagement pursuant to Rules 204.1, 204.2, 204.4 or 204.7.

CI 204.7 INSOLVENCY ENGAGEMENTS

Member acting as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, or as liquidator, receiver or receiver/manager.

1. Rule 204.7 deals with objectivity and independence in insolvency practice. This interpretation sets out how, in Council’s opinion, a reasonable observer might be expected to view certain situations related to insolvency practice.

2. A firm and a member, or member of the firm, and their respective immediate families, should not acquire directly or indirectly in any manner whatsoever any assets under the administration of the member or firm, provided that any of the foregoing may acquire assets from a retail operation under administration of the member or firm where those assets are available to the general public for sale and that no special treatment or preference over and above that granted to the public is offered to or accepted by the firm, the member or the member of the firm and their respective immediate families.

3. A member or firm should avoid being placed in a position of conflict of interest and, in keeping with this principle, should not accept any appointment:
   (a) which is prohibited by law, or
   (b) as a receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, or liquidator, or any appointment under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, except as an inspector, in respect of any debtor, where the member or firm is, or at any time during the two preceding years was:
      i. a director or officer of the debtor;
      ii. an employer or employee of the debtor or of a director or officer of the debtor;
      iii. related to the debtor or to any director or officer of the debtor; or
      iv. the auditor, accountant or legal counsel, or a partner or an employee of the auditor, accountant or legal counsel of the debtor.

For purposes of this Interpretation the term “accountant” means any member or firm who has performed a review engagement with respect to the financial statements of the debtor in accordance with the CICA Handbook — Assurance.

4. Where a conflict of interest may exist, or may appear to exist, a member or a firm should make full disclosure to, and obtain the written consent of, all interested parties and, in keeping with this principle, should not accept any appointment:
   (a) as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act where the member or firm has already accepted an appointment as receiver, receiver-manager, agent of a secured creditor, liquidator, trustee under a trust indenture issued by the bankrupt corporation or by any corporation related to the bankrupt corporation, or on behalf of any person related to the bankrupt without having first made disclosure of such prior appointment. The member or firm should inform the creditors of the bankrupt of the prior appointment as soon as reasonably possible;
   (b) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor or on behalf of any person related to the bankrupt where the member or firm has already accepted an appointment as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act without first obtaining the permission of the inspectors of the bankrupt estate. Where inspectors have not been appointed at the time that the second appointment is to be taken, the
member of firm should obtain the approval of the creditors of the bankrupt of having taken the second appointment as soon as reasonably possible; and if the second appointment is taken before obtaining the approval of the creditors, it should be taken subject to their approval;

(c) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any corporation where the member or firm is, or at any time during the two-year period commencing at the date of the last audit report or the last review engagement report was, the trustee (or related to such trustee) under a trust indenture issued by such corporation or by any corporation related to such corporation without first obtaining the permission of the creditors secured under such trust indenture. Upon the acceptance of any such appointment as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, the member or firm should inform the creditors of the bankrupt corporation of the prior appointment as (or relationship to) the trustee under a trust indenture issued by the bankrupt corporation or by any corporation related to the bankrupt corporation as soon as reasonably possible;

(d) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, liquidator of an insolvent company under the Winding-Up and Restructuring Act, or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any corporation where the member or firm is related to an officer or director of such corporation; or

(e) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any person or corporation where the member or firm is a creditor, or an officer or director of any corporation that is a creditor, of such person or corporation unless the relationship is sufficiently remote that the member or firm can act having independence in fact and appearance.

5. For purposes of paragraphs 3 and 4, persons are related to each other if they are defined as such under Section 4 of the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act.

6. A member or firm engaged in insolvency practice should ensure there are no relationships with retired partners which may be seen to impair the member’s or firm’s independence. Refer to paragraph 29 of the interpretations in respect of Rules 204.1 to 204.6.

CI 204.8 INDEPENDENCE - DISCLOSURE OF IMPAIRMENT OF INDEPENDENCE

Professional services, other than assurance or specified auditing procedures and insolvency engagements

1. Members and firms who provide a professional service which does not require the member or firm to be independent are required by Rule 204.8 to disclose any activity, interest or relationship which, in respect of the professional service, would be seen by a reasonable observer to impair the member’s or firm’s independence. Members and firms should refer to Rules 204.1 to 204.7 and the related Council Interpretations when determining whether they must be independent and would appear to be independent with respect to particular engagements.

2. Such disclosure is required whether or not any written report or other communication is provided and should indicate the nature of the activity or relationship and the nature and extent of the interest. Any written communication concerning or accompanying financial statements or financial or other information must include such disclosure.

3. Independence is not required for compilation engagements. Where the provider of the compilation service may be seen to be lacking independence, the disclosure requirement of Rule 204.8 applies.

4. For the purposes of Rule 204.8 the preparation of accounting records or journal entries in connection with a compilation engagement is not an activity that requires disclosure in
the Notice To Reader unless such preparation involves complex transactions as contemplated by paragraph 143 of the Council Interpretations to Rule 204.1 to 204.6.

5. Tax return services may require disclosure in respect of some of the information filed with the return. If the return is simply the assembling and reporting of information provided by the taxpayer, then the member or firm involved has simply processed that information and disclosure should not be necessary.

6. Members and firms are cautioned that disclosure under Rule 204.8 does not relieve them from their obligation to comply with the rules of professional conduct and in particular Rules 201, 202, 205 and 206.

**New Council Interpretations - June 2014 amendment - see EFFECTIVE DATES Council Interpretations.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CI 204 (COUNCIL INTERPRETATIONS FOR RULES 204.1 TO 204.6)</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction ........................................................................</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The framework .......................................................................</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network firms .......................................................................</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engagements that are not audit or review engagements .......</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent of application of requirement for independence for different types of engagement .</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related entities ..................................................................</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key audit partners ...........................................................</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retired partners ..................................................................</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluating threats and safeguards ....................................</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threats to independence .....................................................</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safeguards ..........................................................................</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practitioners with small or owner-managed clients ............</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engagement period ............................................................</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting issuers and listed entities ................................</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application of the framework .............................................</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Financial interests .......................................................</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Loans and guarantees .....................................................</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Close business relationships .........................................</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Family and personal relationships ..................................</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Employment with an assurance client ................................</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Recent service with an assurance client .........................</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. Serving as an officer or a member of the board of directors of an assurance client ..........</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. Religious organizations ..................................................</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Intentionally left blank ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Long association of senior personnel with an assurance client ..</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. Audit committee prior approval of services to a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client ..........</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Provision of non-assurance services to an assurance client ..</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General provisions ............................................................</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance of management functions ..................................</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebuttable presumption – not subject to audit procedures ........</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation of accounting records and financial statements ......</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation services ............................................................</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actuarial services to a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client ..........</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal audit services to an audit or review client ...............</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information technology system services to an audit or review client ..........</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Litigation support services to an audit or review client ..........</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal services to an audit or review client ..........................</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Section CI [56]  June 2014*
INTRODUCTION

1. It is a fundamental principle of the practice of Chartered Accountancy that a member who provides assurance services shall do so with unimpaired professional judgment and objectivity, and shall be seen to be doing so by a reasonable observer. This principle is the foundation for public confidence in the reports of assurance providers.

2. The confidence that professional judgment has been exercised depends on the unbiased and objective state of mind of the reporting accountant, both in fact and appearance. Independence is the condition of mind and circumstance that would reasonably be expected to result in the application by a member of unbiased judgment and objective consideration in arriving at opinions or decisions in support of the member's report. A member or firm is not considered to be independent if the member or firm does not comply with the provisions of Rules 204.1 to 204.4.

3. Rule 204.1 provides that a member or firm who engages or participates in an engagement:
   (a) to issue a written communication under the terms of any assurance engagement; or
   (b) to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures;
   must be independent of the client. Independence requires the avoidance of situations which impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member, firm or a member of the firm or which, in the view of a reasonable observer, would impair that professional judgment or objectivity.

4. Rule 204.2 provides that a member or firm, who is required to be independent pursuant to Rule 204.1 in respect of a particular engagement, must comply with Rules 204.3 and 204.4.

5. Rule 204.3 provides that a member or firm, who is required to be independent pursuant to Rule 204.1 in respect of a particular engagement, must identify and evaluate threats to independence and, if they are not clearly insignificant, identify and apply safeguards to reduce them to an acceptable level. Where safeguards are not available to reduce the threats to an acceptable level the member or firm must eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threats, or refuse to accept or continue the engagement.

Rule 204.4 describes circumstances and activities which members and firms must avoid when performing assurance and specified auditing procedure engagements because adequate safeguards will not exist that will, in the view of a reasonable observer, eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, as required by Rule 204.3. The requirements to avoid these circumstances and activities are referred to as "prohibitions."
6. Rule 204.5 requires a member or firm to document compliance with Rules 204.3, 204.4(24), 204.4(34)(b), 204.4(35) and 204.4(40).

7. Rule 204.6 provides that a member or student must disclose breaches of the Rule to a designated partner in the firm. It also provides that, when a member or student has been assigned to an engagement team, the member or student must disclose to a designated partner any interest, relationship or activity that would preclude the member or student from being on the engagement team.

Rule 204.7 provides that a firm must ensure that members of the firm comply with Rule 204.4. The Rule provides that a firm may not permit a member of the firm to have a relationship with or an interest in an assurance client, or provide a service to an assurance client, which is precluded by Rule 204.

8. This Council Interpretation describes a conceptual framework of principles that members and firms should use to identify threats to independence and evaluate their significance. If the threats are other than clearly insignificant, the member or firm should identify available safeguards. Some safeguards may already exist within the structure of the firm or the client, while others may be created by the action of the member, firm or client. Safeguards should be identified and, where applicable, applied to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Members should exercise professional judgment to determine which safeguards to apply and whether the safeguards will permit the member or firm to accept or continue the engagement.

9. The effectiveness of safeguards largely depends on the culture of the particular firm. Therefore, the Council encourages leaders of firms to stress the importance of compliance with Rule 204 and emphasize the expectation that members of the firm will act in the public interest. In doing so, firms should create and monitor effective policies and procedures designed to preserve the independence of the firm and its partners and employees when required by Rule 204.

10. The examples presented herein are intended to illustrate the application of the principles; they are not, nor should they be interpreted as, an exhaustive list of all circumstances that may create a threat to independence. Consequently, it is not sufficient for a member or firm merely to comply with the examples presented. Rule 204.3 requires that they apply the principles to any particular circumstance encountered, whether or not the examples used in the Council Interpretation, or the prohibitions set out in Rule 204.4, reflect those circumstances.

11. These examples describe specific circumstances and relationships that may create threats to independence. They also describe the safeguards that may be appropriate to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level in each circumstance. While the examples relate to the audit or review of financial statements and other assurance engagements, they also apply to engagements to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures as required by Rule 204.1(b).

12. This Council Interpretation sets out how, in the Council’s opinion, a reasonable observer might view certain situations in the application of Rule 204.1 to 204.7. The reasonable observer is a hypothetical individual who has knowledge of the facts which the member knew or ought to have known, including the safeguards applied, and who applies judgment objectively, with integrity and due care. Members should also refer to the Foreword to the Rules, which provides the rationale for establishing the reasonable observer principle.
13. Members are reminded that for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.7, independence includes both independence of mind and independence in appearance. As stated in Rule 204.1, independence requires the absence of any influence, interest or relationship which would impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member or a member of the firm or which, in the view of a reasonable observer, would impair the professional judgment or objectivity of the member or a member of the firm. Frequently it is appearance of independence, or lack thereof, that poses the greatest challenge. In all situations, members should reflect on the wording of the Rule and Council Interpretation to ensure compliance with the spirit and intent of the Rule and Council Interpretation.

14. If, after considering the rules and this Council Interpretation, members are uncertain as to their correct application, they are encouraged to discuss the matter with partners, professional colleagues or Institute staff.

15. Members should also be cognizant of any relevant Canadian or foreign legislation that may preclude a member from accepting or continuing an engagement. Members are cautioned that legislation under which corporations and other enterprises are incorporated or governed may impose differing requirements in respect of independence. Members should satisfy both the requirements of any governing legislation and these Rules of Professional Conduct.

16. Members and firms are reminded that Rules 204.8 and 204.9 deal respectively with independence standards for insolvency engagements and the requirement to disclose when the appearance of independence may be lacking in other engagements.

THE FRAMEWORK

17. The objective of this Council Interpretation is to assist members and firms in:

(a) identifying and evaluating threats to independence; and

(b) identifying and applying appropriate safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threat or threats to an acceptable level in instances where their cumulative effect is not clearly insignificant.

This Council Interpretation also describes those situations referred to in Rule 204.4 where safeguards are not available to reduce a threat or threats to an acceptable level, and the only possible actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating them, or to refuse to accept or continue the assurance engagement.

18. The use of the word “independence” on its own may create misunderstandings. Standing alone, the word may suggest that a person exercising professional judgment ought to be free from all economic, financial and other relationships. This is impossible, as everyone has relationships with others. Therefore, members should evaluate the significance of economic, financial and other relationships in the light of what a reasonable observer would conclude to be acceptable in maintaining independence.

19. In making this evaluation, many different circumstances may be relevant. Accordingly, it is impossible to define every situation that creates a threat to independence and specify the appropriate mitigating action. In addition, because of differences in the size and structure of firms, the nature of assurance engagements and client entities different threats may exist, that require the application of different safeguards. A conceptual framework that requires members and firms to identify, evaluate and address threats to independence, rather than merely comply with a set of specific and perhaps arbitrary rules, is, therefore, in the public interest.
20. Based on such an approach, this Council Interpretation describes a conceptual framework of principles for compliance with Rules 204.1 to 204.7. Members, firms and network firms should use this conceptual framework to identify threats to independence, to evaluate their significance and, if they are other than clearly insignificant, to identify and apply safeguards to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level, so that independence in fact and appearance are not impaired. In addition, consideration should be given to whether relationships between members of the firm who are not on the engagement team and the assurance client may also create threats to independence. Where safeguards are not available to reduce threats to an acceptable level, the member, firm or network firm should eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threats, or the member or firm should refuse to accept or continue the particular engagement.

21. Rule 204.1 requires members and firms to be independent in fact and in appearance. The requirement to comply with the specific prohibitions set out in Rule 204.4 does not relieve a firm from complying with Rules 204.1 and 204.3 and the need to apply the conceptual framework and determine on a principles-based approach whether or not the firm is independent with respect to all assurance engagements, including audit and review engagements.

22. Rule 204.1 and, therefore, the principles in this Council Interpretation apply to all assurance engagements and engagements to issue a report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures. The nature of the threats to independence and the applicable safeguards necessary to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level will differ depending on the particulars of the engagement. Differences in threats and safeguards will arise, for example, if the engagement is an audit or review engagement or another type of assurance engagement; and, in the case of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, in the purpose, subject matter and intended users of the report. Members and firms should, therefore, evaluate the relevant circumstances, the nature of the engagement and the entity, the threats to independence and the adequacy of available safeguards in deciding whether it is appropriate to accept or continue an engagement, and whether a particular person should be on the engagement team.

23. For audit clients and review clients, the persons on the engagement team, the firm and network firms should be independent of the client. In the case of an assurance engagement where the client is neither an audit nor a review client, those on the engagement team and the firm should be independent of the client. In addition, in the case of an engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, consideration should be given to any threats the firm has reason to believe may be created by the interests and relationships of network firms.

24. The term “firm” means a sole practitioner, partnership or association of members who carries or carry on the practice of public accounting, or carries or carry on related activities as defined by the Council. A related activity includes a related business or practice that is cross-referenced with a practice of public accounting or with any other business or practice which is cross-referenced with a practice of public accounting in accordance with Rule 420. In those jurisdictions where a member or firm may practice in a corporate form, firm includes a professional corporation.

**NETWORK FIRMS**

25. The references to “firms” and “network firms” in Rules 204.1 to 204.7 and this Council Interpretation should be read as referring to those entities themselves and not to the persons who are partners or employees thereof.
26. Rules 204.1 to 204.4 and this Council Interpretation bring the independence of a network firm into consideration when evaluating the independence of a member or firm for an assurance engagement. It is the member’s or firm’s responsibility to determine whether the network firm and its members have any interests or relationships or provide any services that would create threats to independence.

26A A firm may participate in a larger structure with other firms and entities to enhance its ability to provide professional services. Whether the agreements and relationships among the firms and entities that are part of such a larger structure are such that any of the firms or entities is a network firm depends on the particular facts and circumstances. The geographic location of the firms and entities, either within or outside of Canada, is irrelevant as to whether such a larger structure exists. Whether the firms and entities are legally separate from each other is not determinative, in and of itself, of whether such a larger structure exists.

26B Another firm or entity will not be considered to be network firm simply by virtue of the existence of one of the following arrangements between that other firm or entity and the firm itself:

(a) the sharing of costs that are immaterial to the firm that is performing the particular engagement;
(b) an association with the other firm or entity to provide a service or develop a product on a joint basis;
(c) co-operation to facilitate the referral of work or solely to respond jointly to a request for a proposal for the provision of a professional service;
(d) references on stationery or in promotional materials to an association with other firms or entities that does not constitute a larger structure of co-operating firms or entities as described in the definition of network firm; or
(e) the use of a common name when an agreement in relation to the sale of a component of a firm or entity provides that each of the transacting firms or entities may use the existing name for a limited period of time.

26C The definition of a network firm refers to co-operating entities that share significant professional resources. Shared professional resources may be considered to be significant where there is an exchange of people or information, such as where staff is drawn from a shared pool, or a common technical department is created within a larger structure to provide participating firms or entities with technical advice that they are required to follow. Shared professional resources will not be considered to be significant when they are limited to common audit methodology or audit manuals or a shared training endeavour, with no exchange of personnel or client or market information. Similarly, the sharing of costs limited only to the development of such common audit methodology, audit manuals or a shared training endeavour will not be considered to give rise to a network firm relationship.

ENGAGEMENTS THAT ARE NOT AUDIT OR REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS

27. An engagement to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures is not an assurance engagement as contemplated in the CICA Handbook – Assurance. However, for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.7 and this Council Interpretation, the principles contained herein applicable to an assurance engagement, other than an audit or review engagement, also apply to an engagement to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures. In so applying those principles, the reference to an assurance client is to be read as a reference to a client where the engagement is to report on the results of applying specified auditing procedures.
28. In the case of an assurance report to an assurance client that is not an audit client or a review client where the report is intended only for the use of identified users, as contemplated by the CICA Handbook – Assurance, the users of the report are considered to be knowledgeable as to the purpose, subject matter and limitations of the report. Users gain such knowledge through their participation in establishing the nature and scope of the member’s or firm’s engagement, including the criteria by which the particular subject matter is to be evaluated. The member’s or firm’s knowledge and enhanced ability to communicate about safeguards with all the report’s users increase the effectiveness of safeguards to independence in appearance. Therefore, the member or firm may take these circumstances into account when evaluating the threats to independence and considering the applicable safeguards necessary to eliminate them or reduce them to an acceptable level. With respect to network firms, limited consideration of any threats created by their interests and relationships may be sufficient.

EXTENT OF APPLICATION OF REQUIREMENT FOR INDEPENDENCE FOR DIFFERENT TYPES OF ENGAGEMENT

29. The effect of Rules 204.1 to 204.7 is that:

(a) For an assurance engagement for a client that is an audit or review client, those on the engagement team, the firm and network firms are required to be independent of the client.

(b) For an assurance engagement for a client that is not an audit or review client, when the assurance report is not intended only for the use of identified users, those on the engagement team and the firm are required to be independent of the client.

(c) For an assurance engagement for a client that is not an audit or review client, when the assurance report is intended only for the use of identified users, those on the engagement team are required to be independent of the client. In addition, the firm should not have a material direct or indirect financial interest in the client.

30. Intentionally left blank.

RELATED ENTITIES

31. For the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.7 “related entity” is a defined term that is dependent on the nature of the assurance engagement, the nature of the client and the relationship between the client and the other entity. The circumstances in which another entity is defined to be a related entity of an assurance client are outlined below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition reference</th>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Reporting issuer or listed entity client</th>
<th>Audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity</th>
<th>Non-audit, non-review assurance client</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)(i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(ii)&amp;(iii)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(ii)(A)&amp;(B)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(ii)&amp;(iii)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The entity is controlled by the client.

The entity has either control (ii) or significant influence (iii) over the client and the client is material to the entity.
The entity and the client are both controlled by a second entity and both the client and the first entity are material to the controlling second entity.

The entity is subject to significant influence by the client and the entity is material to the client.

*An entity referred to in paragraphs (b)(ii)(A) to (D) and (c)(i) to (v) of the definition of “related entity”, as applicable, is a related entity if the engagement team knows or has reason to believe that an activity, interest or relationship involving the other entity is relevant to the evaluation of independence of the member or firm with respect to the assurance engagement. This condition is not intended to require the engagement team to undertake a search for such possible activities, interests or relationships with such entities.

In determining whether significant influence exists members should follow the guidance established in the CICA Handbook – Accounting. Ideally, the client’s related entities and the interests and relationships that involve the related entities should be identified in advance.

A “key audit partner” is defined as an audit partner who is the lead engagement partner, the engagement quality control reviewer, and any other audit partner on the engagement team who makes important decisions or judgments on significant matters with respect to the audit or review engagement.

A key audit partner does not include those “specialty” and “technical” partners who consult with others on the engagement team regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events, including tax matters. In addition, the provisions of Rules 204.4(20)(b) and 204.4(38) do not apply to those partners who, subsequent to the issuance of the audit report, provide quality control for the engagement. Such partners typically have a low level of involvement with senior management as well as a relatively low level responsibility for overall presentation in the financial statements.

A transitional provision has been introduced in relation to the adoption, in 2014, of the term “key audit partner”. This transitional provision will permit a person who was not required to rotate under the previous requirements to serve up to an additional two years in a key audit partner role before rotation is required.

A retired partner who retains a close association with the firm from which the partner has retired is considered to be a member of the firm for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.7 and the related Council Interpretation. Retired partners may have varying degrees of involvement with the firm. When a retired partner continues to provide administrative or client service for or
on behalf of the firm, the partner may be closely associated with the firm. The following factors may indicate that the partner retains a close association with the firm:

- the nature and extent of the retired partner’s client and administrative activities within the firm may be more than clearly insignificant and transitional;
- the retired partner holds a direct or indirect financial interest in the firm, including share-based retirement income that may fluctuate with the firm’s income; and
- the retired partner is held out to be a member of the firm through, for example, having a separate, identified office on the firm’s premises, acting as its spokesperson or representative, using a firm business card or having a listing in the firm’s telephone directory for other than a predetermined period of time following retirement.

When evaluating whether a retired partner has a close association with the firm, consideration should be given to how a reasonable observer would regard the association.

34. Intentionally left blank.

**EVALUATING THREATS AND SAFEGUARDS**

35. The ongoing evaluation and disposition of threats to independence should be supported by evidence obtained both before accepting an engagement and while it is being performed. The obligation to make such evaluation and take action arises when a member of a firm or network firm knows, or should reasonably be expected to know, of circumstances or relationships that might impair independence. There may be occasions when a member, a firm or a network firm is inadvertently in breach of a provision of Rule 204. If such an inadvertent breach occurs, it would generally not impair independence for the purposes of Rules 204.1 to 204.7, provided the firm had appropriate quality control policies and procedures in place to promote independence and, once discovered, the breach was corrected promptly and any necessary safeguards were applied. An inadvertent breach would include a situation where the member did not know of the circumstances that created the breach.

36. Rule 204.4 describes activities, interests or relationships that create threats to independence that are so significant that there are no safeguards available to reduce them to an acceptable level and, accordingly, prohibits the provision of assurance services, as specified, in conjunction with such activities, interests or relationships. Rules 204.1 to 204.7 and this Council Interpretation also describe the threats to independence and analyze safeguards that may be capable of eliminating them or reducing them to an acceptable level. They conclude with some examples of how the conceptual framework to independence is to be applied to specific circumstances and relationships and the relevant threats and safeguards. The examples are not all inclusive. Professional judgment should be used to determine whether appropriate safeguards exist to eliminate all threats to independence or to reduce their cumulative effect to an acceptable level. In some examples, it may be possible to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. In some other examples, the threat or threats to independence will be so significant that the only possible actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threat or threats, or to refuse to accept or continue the engagement.

37. When a member or firm identifies a threat to independence that is not clearly insignificant, and the member or firm decides to apply appropriate safeguards and accepts or continues the assurance engagement, the decision should be documented in accordance with Rule 204.5. The documentation should include the following information:

(a) a description of the nature of the engagement;
(b) the threat identified;
(c) the safeguard or safeguards identified and applied to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level; and
(d) an explanation of how, in the member or firm’s professional judgment, the safeguards eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level.

38. Throughout this Council Interpretation, reference is made to “significant” and “clearly insignificant”. In considering the significance of any particular matter, qualitative as well as quantitative factors should be taken into account. A matter should be considered clearly insignificant only if it is both trivial and inconsequential.

**THREATS TO INDEPENDENCE**

39. Independence is potentially affected by self-interest, self-review, advocacy, familiarity and intimidation threats. The mere existence of such threats does not per se mean that the performance of a prospective engagement is precluded. The undertaking or continuation of an engagement is only precluded where safeguards are not available to eliminate or reduce the threats to an acceptable level or where Rule 204.4 provides a specific prohibition.

40. A **Self-Interest Threat** occurs when a firm or a person on the engagement team could benefit from a financial interest in, or other self-interest conflict with, an assurance client. Examples of circumstances that may create a self-interest threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in an assurance client;
(b) a loan or guarantee to or from an assurance client or any of its directors or officers;
(c) dependence by a firm, office or member on total fees from an assurance client;
(d) undue concern about the possibility of losing the engagement;
(e) evaluating performance or providing compensation for selling non-audit services to an assurance client;
(f) having a close business relationship with an assurance client; and
(g) potential employment with an assurance client.

41. A **Self-Review Threat** occurs when any product or judgment from a previous engagement needs to be evaluated in reaching a conclusion on the particular assurance engagement, or when a person on the engagement team was previously an officer or director of the client, or was in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement. Examples of circumstances that may create a self-review threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a person on the engagement team being, or having recently been, an officer or director of the client;
(b) a person on the engagement team being, or having recently been, an employee of the assurance client in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, or another person having the duties or responsibilities normally associated with such an employee;
(c) a member or firm performing services for an assurance client that directly affect the subject matter of the engagement; and
(d) a member or firm preparing original data used to generate financial statements or preparing other records that are the subject matter of the engagement.
42. An **Advocacy Threat** occurs when a firm, or a person on the engagement team, promotes, or may be perceived to promote, an assurance client’s position or opinion to the point that objectivity may be, or may be perceived to be, impaired. Such would be the case if a person on the engagement team were to subordinate his or her judgment to that of the client, or the firm were to do so. Examples of circumstances that may create an advocacy threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) dealing in, or being a promoter of, shares or other securities of an assurance client; and
(b) acting as an advocate for or on behalf of an assurance client in litigation or in resolving disputes with third parties.

43. A **Familiarity Threat** occurs when, by virtue of a close relationship with an assurance client, its directors, officers or employees, a firm or a person on the engagement team becomes too sympathetic to the client’s interests. Examples of circumstances that may create a familiarity threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) a person on the engagement team having an immediate or close family member who is an officer or director of the assurance client;
(b) a person on the engagement team having an immediate or close family member who is in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement;
(c) a former partner of the firm being an officer or director of the assurance client or in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement;
(d) the long association of a senior person on the engagement team with the assurance client; and
(e) the acceptance of gifts or hospitality from the assurance client, its directors, officers or employees, unless the value thereof is clearly insignificant.

44. An **Intimidation Threat** occurs when a person on the engagement team may be deterred from acting objectively and exercising professional skepticism by threats, actual or perceived, from the directors, officers or employees of an assurance client. Examples of circumstances that may create an intimidation threat include, but are not limited to:

(a) the threat of being replaced due to a disagreement with the application of an accounting principle; and
(b) the application of pressure to inappropriately reduce the extent of work performed in order to reduce or limit fees.

**SAFEGUARDS**

45. Members and firms have an ongoing responsibility to comply with Rules 204.1 to 204.7 by taking into account the context in which they practise, the threats to independence and the safeguards which may be available to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Safeguards fall into three broad categories:

(a) safeguards created by the profession, legislation or regulation;
(b) safeguards within the assurance client; and
(c) safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures.

46. Safeguards created by the profession, legislation or regulation include the following:

(a) education, training and practical experience requirements for entry into the profession;
(b) continuing education programs;
(c) professional standards;
(d) external practice inspection;
(e) disciplinary processes;
(f) members’ practice advisory services;
(g) participation by members of the public in oversight and governance of the profession; and
(h) legislation governing the independence requirements of the firm and its members.

47. Safeguards within the assurance client may include the following:
   (a) employees of the client who are competent to make management decisions;
   (b) policies and procedures that emphasize the client’s commitment to fair financial reporting;
   (c) internal procedures that ensure objective choices in commissioning non-assurance engagements; and
   (d) an audit committee that provides appropriate oversight and communications regarding a firm’s services.

However, it is not possible to rely solely on safeguards within the assurance client to reduce threats to an acceptable level.

48. Where an audit committee does not exist, as is set out in the definition of “audit committee”, references in this Rule to an audit committee should be interpreted to refer to another governance body which has the duties and responsibilities normally granted to an audit committee or to those charged with governance for the entity. In some cases, this role may be filled by client management personnel. The CICA Handbook – Assurance requires members and firms to determine the appropriate person or persons within the entity’s governance structure with whom to communicate and establishes requirements for communication on matters relating to independence with such a person or persons.

49. Intentionally left blank.

50. Safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures may include firm-wide safeguards such as the following:
   (a) firm leadership that stresses the importance of independence and the expectation that persons on engagement teams will act in the public interest;
   (b) policies and procedures to implement and monitor quality control of assurance engagements;
   (c) documented independence policies regarding the identification of threats to independence, the evaluation of their significance and the identification and application of appropriate safeguards to eliminate or reduce the threats, other than those that are clearly insignificant, to an acceptable level;
   (d) internal policies and procedures, including annual reporting by members of the firm, to monitor compliance with firm policies and procedures as they relate to independence;
   (e) policies and procedures that will enable the identification of interests or relationships between the firm or those on the engagement team and assurance clients;
   (f) policies and procedures to monitor and manage the reliance on revenue received from a single assurance client;
(g) internal performance measures that do not put excessive pressure on partners to generate non-assurance revenue from their assurance clients and do not over emphasize budgeted hours;

(h) using different partners and teams with separate reporting lines for the provision of non-assurance services to an assurance client;

(i) policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm who are not on the engagement team from influencing the outcome of the assurance engagement;

(j) timely communication of a firm’s policies and procedures, and any changes thereto, to all members of the firm, including appropriate training and education thereon;

(k) designating a member of the firm’s senior management as responsible for overseeing the adequate functioning of the safeguarding system;

(l) means of advising all members of the firm of those clients and related entities from which they should be independent;

(m) an internal disciplinary mechanism to promote compliance with firm policies and procedures; or

(n) policies and procedures that empower members of the firm to communicate, without fear of retribution, to senior levels within the firm any issue of independence and objectivity that may concern them.

51 Safeguards within the firm’s own systems and procedures may include engagement-specific safeguards such as the following:

(a) involving another person to review the work done or advise as necessary. This person could be someone from outside the firm or network firm, or someone from within who was not otherwise associated with the engagement team. The person should be independent of the assurance client and will not, by reason of the review performed or advice given, be considered to be on the engagement team;

(b) consulting a third party, such as a committee of independent directors, a professional regulatory body or a professional colleague;

(c) rotating senior personnel on the engagement team;

(d) discussing independence issues with the audit committee;

(e) disclosing to the audit committee, the nature of services provided and extent of fees charged;

(f) policies and procedures designed to ensure that persons on the engagement team do not make, or assume responsibility for, management decisions for the client;

(g) involving another firm to perform or re-perform part of the assurance engagement;

(h) involving another firm to re-perform the non-assurance service; or

(i) removing a person from the engagement team, when that person’s financial interests, relationships or activities create a threat to independence.

PRACTITIONERS WITH SMALL OR OWNER-MANAGED CLIENTS

52 The size and structure of the firm and the nature of the assurance client and the engagement will affect the type and degree of the threats to independence and, consequently, the types of safeguards appropriate to eliminate such threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. For example, it is understood that not all the safeguards noted in paragraphs 47 - 51 will be available to the sole practitioner or small firm or within smaller clients such as owner-managed entities. Smaller clients often rely on members to provide a broad range of accounting and business services. Independence will not be impaired provided such services are not specifically prohibited by Rule 204.4 and provided safeguards are applied to reduce
any threat to an acceptable level. In many circumstances, explaining the result of the service and obtaining client approval and acceptance for the result of the service will be an appropriate safeguard for such smaller entities. Similarly, such clients often have a long-standing relationship with an individual who is a sole practitioner or partner from a firm. Independence will not be impaired provided safeguards are applied to reduce any familiarity threat to an acceptable level. In most circumstances, periodic external practice inspection and, where appropriate, consultation will reduce any threat to independence to an acceptable level.

**ENGAGEMENT PERIOD**

53 The firm and those on the engagement team should be independent of the assurance client during the period of the assurance engagement. This period starts at the earlier of the date when the member or firm signs the engagement letter or commences procedures in respect of the engagement and ends when the assurance report is issued, except when the engagement is of a recurring nature. If the assurance engagement is expected to recur, the engagement period ends with the notification by either party that the professional relationship has terminated or the issuance of the final assurance report, whichever is later. In the case of an audit engagement for a reporting issuer or listed entity, the engagement period ends when the audit client or the firm notifies the relevant Securities Commission that the audit client is no longer an audit client of the firm.

54 In the case of an audit or review engagement, independence is also required during the period covered by the financial statements reported on by the member or firm. When an entity becomes an audit or review client during or after the period covered by the financial statements on which the member or firm will report, the member or firm should consider whether any threats to independence may be created by financial or business relationships with the client during or after the period covered by the financial statements, but prior to the acceptance of the engagement.

Similarly, in the case of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, the member or firm should consider whether any financial or business relationships may create threats to independence.

55 If a non-assurance service was provided to an audit or review client during or after the period covered by the financial statements but before the engagement period in connection with the audit or review engagement and the non-assurance service would have been prohibited by the provisions of Rules 204.4(22) to (34) in relation to the performance of an audit or review engagement for the client, the provisions of Rule 204.4(35) apply. Rule 204.4(35)(a) requires the member or firm to:

(a) discuss independence issues related to the provision of the non-assurance service with the audit committee;
(b) require the client to review and accept responsibility for the results of the non-assurance service; and
(c) preclude personnel who provided the non-assurance service from participating in the audit or review engagement such that any threat created by the provision of the non-assurance service is reduced to an acceptable level.

The determination as to whether any such threat has been so reduced will require the member or firm to consider the nature and impact of the threat to independence and take
any further measures that are necessary to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such further measures might include engaging another firm to review the results of the non-assurance service or having another firm re-perform that service to the extent necessary to enable the other firm to take responsibility for the non-assurance service.

If the provision of the non-assurance service creates such a significant threat to independence that compliance with the requirements of Rule 204.4(35)(a) would still not reduce any such threat to an acceptable level, the member or firm is required to decline the audit or review engagement.

Members and firms are also reminded that, even where a non-assurance service that is not specifically addressed by the provisions of Rules 204.4(22) to (35) has been provided to an audit or review client, a threat to independence may still be created by the provision of the non-assurance service. In such circumstances, members and firms are required, in accordance with the provisions of Rule 204.3, to evaluate any threats so created and apply safeguards to reduce them to an acceptable level or decline the audit or review engagement.

**55A** Members and firms are also required by Rule 204.5(d) to document:

(a) a description of the previously provided non-assurance service;
(b) the results of the discussion with the audit committee;
(c) any further measures applied to address the threat created by the provision of the previous non-assurance service; and
(d) the rationale to support the decision of the member or firm to accept the audit or review engagement.

**REPORTING ISSUERS AND LISTED ENTITIES**

**56** Rule 204.4(35)(b) addresses the situation where a non-assurance service has been provided to an audit client prior to that client becoming a reporting issuer or listed entity and the non-assurance service would have been prohibited by the provisions of Rules 204.4(22) to (34) in relation to the performance of an audit engagement for a reporting issuer or listed entity. Rule 204.4(35)(b) requires the member or firm to:

(a) discuss independence issues related to the provision of the non-assurance service with the audit committee;
(b) require the client to review and accept responsibility for the results of the non-assurance service; and
(c) preclude personnel who provided the non-assurance service from participating in the audit engagement such that any threat created by the provision of the non-assurance service is reduced to an acceptable level.

**56A** Members and firms are also required by Rule 204.5(e) to document:

(a) a description of the previously provided non-assurance service;
(b) the results of the discussion with the audit committee;
(c) any further measures applied to address the threat created by the provision of the previous non-assurance service; and
(d) the rationale to support the decision of the member or firm.

**57** For the purposes of Rule 204.4 an entity is a reporting issuer if it is defined as a reporting issuer.
issuer under the applicable Canadian provincial or territorial securities legislation and has market capitalization or total assets in excess of $10,000,000. In the case of a period in which an entity makes a public offering, market capitalization is measured at the closing price on the day of the public offering and total assets refers to the total assets presented on the most recent financial statements, prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, that are included in the offering document. An entity is a listed entity if it has shares, debt or other securities that are quoted on, listed on or marketed through a recognized stock exchange or other equivalent body, whether that recognized stock exchange or other equivalent body is located within or outside of Canada, and has market capitalization or total assets in excess of $10,000,000. In the case of a period in which an entity makes a public offering, market capitalization is measured at the closing price on the day of the public offering and total assets refers to the total assets presented on the most recent financial statements, prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, that are included in the offering document.

58 When an entity becomes a reporting issuer or listed entity by virtue of a public offering, the auditor of the entity is required, from that period forward until the entity ceases to be a reporting issuer or listed entity, to comply with the specific prohibitions contained in Rule 204.4 that relate to an audit of a reporting issuer or listed entity. For example, bookkeeping services may not be provided following the date of an initial public offering, except in emergency situations. The provision of bookkeeping services to the entity prior that date would not impair the firm’s independence provided the services were not prohibited by Rule 204.4(23) and provided the firm had complied with the provisions of Rule 204.4(35)(b).

APPLICATION OF THE FRAMEWORK

59 The following examples describe the application of the framework to specific circumstances and relationships that may create threats to independence. The examples describe potential threats created and safeguards that may be appropriate to eliminate the threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. The examples are not intended to be comprehensive or all-inclusive. In practice, when independence is required, members and firms should assess the implications of all circumstances and relationships and, where required, assess those of network firms, to determine whether there are threats to independence that are other than clearly insignificant and, if they exist, whether safeguards can be applied to satisfactorily address them. In situations where safeguards are not available to reduce a threat or threats to an acceptable level, the only possible actions are to eliminate the activity, interest or relationship creating the threats, or to refuse to accept or continue the assurance engagement.

A. FINANCIAL INTERESTS

60 A financial interest in an assurance client may create a self-interest threat. In evaluating the significance of the threat, and the appropriate safeguards to be applied to eliminate the threat or reduce it to an acceptable level, it is necessary to examine the nature of the financial interest. This includes an evaluation of the role of the person holding the financial interest, whether that interest is material and whether it is direct or indirect.

61 Financial interests may be held through an intermediary such as a collective investment vehicle, estate or trust. The determination of whether such financial interests are direct or indirect will depend upon whether the beneficial owner has control over the investment vehicle or the ability to influence its investment decisions. When such control or ability exists, that financial interest is a direct financial interest. Conversely, when such control or ability does not exist, such a financial interest is an indirect financial interest.
In the application of Rules 204.4(1) to (12) to an assurance, audit or review client the reference to an assurance, audit or review client, a client or an entity includes related entities, as defined, of the assurance, audit or review client, client or entity, as the case may be.

**Assurance clients**

**63** Rule 204.4(1) provides that a member or student who participates on an engagement team for an assurance client, including an audit or review client, and the member’s or student’s immediate family member may not hold a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client.

**64** A reasonable observer will not view a member who holds a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest as a trustee differently than someone who holds the interest beneficially. Accordingly Rule 204.4(1) applies to members, students and immediate family members of members or students who hold a direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in the capacity of a trustee.

**65** When a person on an engagement team, or any of the person’s immediate family members, receives, for example, by way of gift or inheritance, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an assurance client, or a related entity, one of the following actions should be taken to comply with Rule 204.4(1):

- dispose of the financial interest at the earliest practical date but no later than 30 days after the person has knowledge of the financial interest and the right or ability to dispose of it; or
- remove the person from the engagement team.

During the period prior to disposal of the financial interest or the removal of the person from the engagement team, consideration should be given to whether additional safeguards are necessary to reduce the threat to independence to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- discussing the matter with the audit committee; or
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and has not been, on the engagement team to review the work done by the person, or advise as necessary.

Members are reminded that Rule 204.6 requires a member who has an interest that is precluded by this Rule to advise in writing a designated partner of the firm of the interest. When a financial interest in an assurance client or related entity is acquired as a result of a merger or acquisition, the provisions of Rule 204.4(40) apply.

**66** When a person on an engagement team knows that a close family member has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the assurance client, or a related entity, a self-interest threat may exist. In evaluating the significance of any such threat, consideration should be given to the nature of the relationship between the person on the engagement team and the close family member and the materiality of the financial interest. Once the significance of the threat has been evaluated, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:

- the close family member disposing of all or a sufficient portion of the financial interest at the earliest practical date;
• discussing the matter with the audit committee;
• involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular person on the engagement team or advise as necessary; or
• removing the person from the engagement team.

Consideration should be given to whether a self-interest threat may exist because of the financial interests of individuals other than those on the engagement team and their immediate and close family members. Such individuals would include:

• a member of the firm who provides a non-assurance service to the assurance client;
• a member of the firm who has a close personal relationship with a person on the engagement team;
• a spouse or dependant of an immediate or close family member of a person on the engagement team; and
• an individual for whom a member of the engagement team holds power of attorney.

Whether the interests held by such individuals may create a self-interest threat will depend upon factors such as:

• the firm’s organizational, operating and reporting structure;
• the nature of the relationship between the individual and the person on the engagement team; and
• in the case of a power of attorney, the degree of decision making power granted by the power of attorney.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

• where appropriate, policies to prohibit such individuals from holding such interests;
• discussing the matter with the audit committee; or
• involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular individual or advise as necessary.

The specific prohibitions of Rule 204.4 do not preclude a firm from accepting an assurance engagement with an entity if one or more partners of the firm who do not participate on the engagement team, and who do not practice in the same office as the lead engagement partner, have a financial interest in the entity. However, Rule 204.1 requires the firm to be independent in fact and appearance and requires the firm to identify threats to independence arising from such circumstances, evaluate the significance of the threats and, if they are other than clearly insignificant, apply safeguards to reduce the threats to an acceptable level. If adequate safeguards are not available the firm should not accept the engagement.

An inadvertent breach of the provisions of Rules 204.4(1) to (12), would not impair the independence of the member of the firm or the firm when:

• the firm has established policies and procedures that require a network firm and all members of the firm to report promptly any breaches resulting from the purchase, inheritance or other acquisition of a financial interest in the assurance client;
• the firm promptly notifies the network firm or the member of the firm that the financial interest should be disposed of; and
• the disposal occurs at the earliest practical date after identification of the issue, but no later than 30 days after the person has both the knowledge of the financial interest and the right or ability to dispose of it, or the person is removed from the engagement team.

70 When an inadvertent breach of the provisions of Rules 204.4(1) to (12) has occurred, the firm should consider whether, and if so which, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:

• involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular member involved in the breach; or
• excluding the particular person from any substantive decision-making concerning the assurance engagement.

Members are reminded that Rule 204.6 requires a member who has an interest that is precluded by Rule 204 to advise in writing a designated partner of the firm of the interest. Inadvertent breaches are also discussed in paragraph 35 of this Council Interpretation.

Assurance clients that are not audit or review clients

71 Rule 204.4(2)(a) provides that a firm may not have a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an assurance client that is not an audit or review client or in a related entity.

72 With respect to an assurance report for an assurance client that is not an audit client or a review client where the report is intended only for the use of identified users, as contemplated by the CICA Handbook – Assurance, members are referred to the provisions in paragraph 28 of this Council Interpretation.

Audit or review clients

73 Rule 204.4(2)(b) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if the member, firm or a network firm has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the entity or in a related entity.

74 Rule 204.4(3) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if a pension or other retirement plan of the firm or a network firm has a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in the entity or in a related entity.

75 Rule 204.4(4) provides that a partner of a firm who holds, or whose immediate family member, except in specified circumstances, holds, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an audit or review client of the firm, or a related entity of the client, may not practice in the same office as the lead engagement partner for the client.

76 The office in which the lead engagement partner practices in connection with an audit or review engagement is not necessarily the office to which that partner is ordinarily assigned. Accordingly, for the purposes of Rule 204.4(4) and this Council Interpretation, when the lead engagement partner is located in a different office from others on the engagement team, professional judgment should be exercised to determine in which office the partner practices in connection with the audit or review engagement.
Rule 204.4(5) provides that a partner or managerial employee of a firm who holds, or whose immediate family member, except in specified circumstances, holds, a direct financial interest or a material indirect financial interest in an audit or review client of the firm, or in a related entity of the client, may not provide a non-assurance service to the client, unless the non-assurance service is clearly insignificant.

A financial interest in an audit or review client, or a related entity, that is held by an immediate family member of:
- a partner located in the office in which the lead engagement partner practices in connection with the audit or review engagement; or
- a member of the firm who provides a non-assurance service to the client

would not create an unacceptable threat to independence provided the financial interest is received as a result of the immediate family member’s employment (e.g., pension rights or share options), the immediate family member does not have the right to dispose of the financial interest or, in the case of a share option, the right to exercise the option and, where appropriate, safeguards are applied to reduce any threat to independence to an acceptable level.

A self-interest threat may exist if the firm, or the network firm, or a person on the engagement team has a financial interest in a particular entity, and an audit or review client or a director, officer or controlling owner thereof also has a financial interest in that entity. Independence is not impaired with respect to the audit or review client if the respective financial interests of the firm, the network firm, or person on the engagement team, and the client or director, officer or controlling owner thereof are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the entity.

Rule 204.4(6) provides that a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for a client if the firm or a network firm has a financial interest in another entity, and the member or firm knows that the client or a director, officer or controlling owner of the client also has a financial interest in the other entity, unless the respective financial interests referred to are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the other entity. In addition, a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an audit or review client if that person or that person’s immediate family member has a financial interest in another entity and knows that the client or a director, officer or controlling owner of the client also has a financial interest in the entity, unless the respective financial interests referred to are immaterial and the client cannot exercise significant influence over the entity.

Intentionally left blank.

Intentionally left blank.

B. LOANS AND GUARANTEES

Rule 204.4(10) provides that a firm may not have a loan from, or have a loan guaranteed by, an assurance client, except where the client is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is immaterial to the firm and the client, and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and is in good standing. The rule further provides that a firm may not make a loan to an assurance client that is not a bank or similar financial institution nor guarantee a loan of an assurance client.
Rule 204.4(11) provides that a firm may not accept a loan from, or have a loan guaranteed by, an officer or director of an assurance client or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% its equity securities, unless the shareholder is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions. In addition, a firm may not make a loan to, or guarantee a loan of, such a person.

Rule 204.4(12) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client of the firm if:

(a) the member or student accepts a loan from, or has a loan guaranteed by, the client, unless the client is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and the loan is in good standing;

(b) the member or student accepts a loan from, or has a loan guaranteed by, an officer or director of the client or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% of its equity securities, unless the shareholder is a bank or similar financial institution and the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions;

(c) the member or student has made a loan to, or guaranteed the borrowings of the client that is not a bank or similar financial institution, an officer or director of the client, or a shareholder of the client who owns more than 10% its equity securities.

A loan from, or a loan guaranteed by, an assurance client that is a bank or a similar financial institution to a person on the engagement team or his or her immediate family member would not create a threat to independence provided the loan or guarantee is made under normal commercial terms and conditions and is in good standing. Examples of such loans include home mortgages, bank overdrafts, car loans and credit card balances.

Similarly, deposits or brokerage accounts of a firm or a person on the engagement team with an assurance client that is a bank, broker or similar financial institution would not create a threat to independence provided the deposit or brokerage account was held under normal commercial terms and conditions.

Rules 204.4(10) and (11) relate to loans and guarantees between a firm and an assurance client. In the case of an assurance client that is an audit or review client, the provisions of Rules 204.4(10) and (11) also apply to network firms. In all cases the provisions of Rule 204.4(10), (11) and (12) should be read as applying also to related entities of the client.

C. CLOSE BUSINESS RELATIONSHIPS

A close business relationship between a firm, a network firm or a person on the engagement team and the assurance client or its management, involving a common commercial or financial interest may create a self-interest or an intimidation threat. Members and firms should also consider whether such threats may be created by close business relationships with a related entity or its management. The following are examples of such relationships:

(a) having a material financial interest in a joint venture with the client or a controlling owner, director, officer or other individual who performs senior management functions for that client;

(b) arrangements to combine one or more services or products of the firm with one or more services or products of the client and to market the package with reference to both parties; and

(c) arrangements under which either the firm or the client acts as a distributor or marketer of
the other’s products or services.
A close business relationship does not include the relationship created by the professional engagement between the client and the member, the firm, or the network firm as the case may be.

90 Rule 204.4(13) provides that a firm or a network firm may not have a close business relationship with an audit or review client or its management unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm or network firm and the client or its management. In the case of an assurance client that is not an audit or review client, a firm may not have a close business relationship with the client or its management unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm and the client or its management, as the case may be.

91 Rule 204.4(13) also provides that a member or student who, or whose immediate family member, has a close business relationship with an assurance client (whether audit, review or other) or its management may not be on the engagement team for the client unless that relationship is limited to a financial interest that is immaterial and the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm or student and the client or its management.

92 In the case of an audit or review client, a business relationship involving an interest held by a firm, a network firm or a person on the engagement team or any of that person’s immediate family members in a closely held entity in which the client or a director or officer of the client, or any group thereof, also has an interest, does not create threats to independence provided:

- the relationship is clearly insignificant to the firm, the network firm and the client;
- the interest held is immaterial to the investor, or group of investors; and
- the interest does not give the investor, or group of investors, the ability to control the closely held entity.

93 The purchase of goods or services from an assurance client by a firm (and, in the case of an audit client, by a network firm) or a person on the engagement team will not generally create a threat to independence, provided the transaction is conducted in the normal course of the client’s business and on an arm’s length basis. However, such a transaction may be of a nature or magnitude such that it does create a self-interest threat. If the threat so created is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- reducing the magnitude of or eliminating the transaction;
- removing the individual involved from the engagement team; or
- discussing the issue with the audit committee.

D. FAMILY AND PERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS

94 Family and personal relationships between a person on an engagement team and a director, officer or certain employees, depending on their role, of the assurance client or a related entity may create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. The significance of such a relationship will depend on a number of factors, including the person’s responsibilities on the assurance engagement, the closeness of the relationship and the role of the family member or other individual within the assurance client or related entity. Consequently, there are many circumstances that involve a threat to independence that will require evaluation.
A person has an accounting role when the person is in a position to or does exercise more than minimal influence over the contents of the client's accounting records related to the financial statements that are subject to audit or review by the member or firm or over anyone who prepares such financial statements.

A person has a financial reporting oversight role when the person is in a position to or does exercise influence over the financial statements that are subject to audit or review by the member or firm or over anyone who prepares such accounting records or financial statements.

An individual holding one of the following titles will generally be considered to be in a financial reporting oversight role: a member of the board of directors or similar management or governing body, president, chief executive officer, chief operating officer, chief accounting officer, controller, director of internal audit, director of financial reporting, treasurer, and, depending upon the particular facts and circumstances, the general counsel.

When the financial statements of an audit or review client are consolidated, a financial reporting oversight role can extend beyond the client to its subsidiaries or investees. In determining whether an individual is in a financial reporting oversight role for the audit or review client, consideration should be given to the position of the individual, the extent of the individual's involvement in the financial reporting process of the client and the impact of the individual's role on the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

Rule 204.4(14) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client if such person's immediate family member is an officer or director of the client or a related entity or is in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement, or was in such a position during any period covered by the assurance report or the engagement period.

When a close family member of a person on the engagement team is an officer or director of the assurance client or is in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, a threat to independence may be created. The significance of the threat will depend on factors such as:

- the position the close family member holds; and
- the role of the particular person on the engagement team.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- removing the particular person from the engagement team;
- where possible, restructuring the engagement team’s responsibilities so that the particular person does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the close family member; or
- policies and procedures to empower staff to communicate, without fear of retribution, to senior levels within the firm any issue of independence and objectivity that may concern them.
A self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat may exist when:

(a) an officer or director or person in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, who is not an immediate or close family member of a person on the engagement team, has a close relationship with a person on the engagement team; or

(b) a director, officer or employee in a financial reporting oversight role with respect to an audit or review client, who is not an immediate or close family member of a person on the engagement team, has a close relationship with a person on the engagement team.

Those on the engagement team should identify such individuals, and evaluate the relationship and consult with others in the firm in accordance with its policies and procedures. The evaluation of the significance of any threat and the availability of safeguards appropriate to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level will include considering matters such as the closeness of the relationship and the role of the individual.

Consideration should be given to whether a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat exists because of a personal or family relationship between a member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team and:

(a) an officer or director of the assurance client or a related entity, or person in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement; or

(b) an officer or director of the assurance client or a related entity, or person in a financial reporting oversight role with respect to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

Members of the firm should identify and evaluate the relationship and consult with others in the firm in accordance with its policies and procedures. The evaluation of the significance of any threat and the availability of safeguards appropriate to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level will include considering matters such as the closeness of the relationship, the interaction of the member of the firm with the engagement team, the position held within the firm, and the role of the individual.

An inadvertent breach of the provisions of Rules 204.4(14) or (15) as they relate to family and personal relationships would not impair the independence of the member of the firm, or the firm, when:

- the firm has established policies and procedures that require all members of the firm to report promptly to the firm any breaches resulting from changes in the employment status of their immediate or close family members or other personal relationships that create a threat to independence;
- either the responsibilities of the engagement team are restructured so that the person on the engagement team does not deal with matters that are within the responsibility of the person with whom he or she is related or has a personal relationship, or, if that is not possible, the firm promptly removes that person from the engagement team; and
- additional care is given to reviewing the work of the particular person on the engagement team.

When an inadvertent breach of the provisions of Rules 204.4(14) or (15) relating to family and personal relationships has occurred, the firm should consider whether, and if so which, safeguards should be applied. Such safeguards might include:

- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement
team to review the work done by the person on the engagement team; or

- excluding that person from any substantive decision-making concerning the assurance engagement.

Members are reminded that Rule 204.6 requires a member who has a relationship that is precluded by this Rule to advise in writing a designated partner of the firm of the interest. Inadvertent breaches are also discussed in paragraph 35 of this Council Interpretation.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

101 Rule 204.4(15) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity if such person’s immediate or close family member has an accounting role or a financial reporting oversight role, or had such a position during the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit by the member or firm or the engagement period.

E. EMPLOYMENT WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

General provisions

102 The independence of a firm or a person on the engagement team may be threatened if an officer or director of the assurance client or a related entity, or a person in a position to exert influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement has been a member of the engagement team or a partner of the firm. Such circumstances may create a self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat, particularly when a significant connection remains between the individual and his or her former firm.

103 The significance of a threat so created will depend upon the following factors:

- the position the individual has taken at the client and whether the position involves significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement or the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm;
- the amount of any involvement the individual will have with the engagement team;
- the length of time since the individual was on the engagement team or with the firm; and
- the former position of the individual within the engagement team or firm.

The significance of such a threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, available safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- modifying the plan for the assurance engagement;
- assigning an engagement team to the subsequent assurance engagement that is of sufficient seniority and experience in relation to the individual who has joined the assurance client;
- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary; or
- performing an additional quality control review of the assurance engagement by the firm.

In such cases, all of the following safeguards will be necessary to reduce the threat to an acceptable level:

- the particular individual is not entitled to any benefits or payments from the firm unless these are made in accordance with fixed predetermined arrangements. In addition, any amount owed to the individual should not be of such significance to threaten the firm’s independence; and
- the particular individual does not continue to participate or appear to participate in the
firm’s business or professional activities.

104 A self-interest threat exists when a person on the engagement team participates in the assurance engagement while knowing, or having reason to believe, that he or she will or may join the client. In all such cases the following safeguards should be applied:

- having firm policies and procedures that require those on the engagement team to notify the firm when entering employment negotiations with the assurance client; and
- removing the person from the engagement team.

In addition, consideration should be given to performing an independent review of any significant judgments made by that person while performing the engagement.

The effect of the safeguards described above is that members and students who initiate or entertain discussions with respect to a potential role with an assurance client would be precluded from being on the engagement team for that assurance engagement until such discussions have been concluded and acceptance of such a role has been declined.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

105 Notwithstanding the general guidance in paragraphs 102 to 104 of this Council Interpretation, Rule 204.4(16)(a) provides that a firm may not perform an audit engagement for a client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity if a person who participated in an audit capacity in an audit of the financial statements of the client is an officer or director of the client or a related entity or is in a financial reporting oversight role unless a period of one year has elapsed from the date when the financial statements of the client were filed with the relevant securities regulator or stock exchange.

106 Rule 204.4(16)(b) provides that, where a person who was the firm’s chief executive officer is an officer or director of the client or related entity or is in a financial reporting oversight role, a firm may not perform an audit engagement for the client unless a period of one year has elapsed from the date that the person assumed that position. Chief executive officer means a person in a position having the usual responsibility and authority of a chief executive officer regardless of the title applied to the person.

107 For the purposes of Rule 204.4(16)(a), other than a key audit partner, the following persons are not considered to have participated in an audit capacity in an earlier audit.

(a) a person who is employed by the reporting issuer or listed entity due to an emergency or other unusual situation provided that the entity’s audit committee has determined that the employment of such person is in the interest of the shareholders;
(b) a person who provided ten or fewer hours of assurance services in the earlier audit;
(c) a person who recommended the compensation of, or who provided direct supervisory, management or oversight of, the lead engagement partner in connection with the performance of the earlier audit, including those at all successively senior levels above the lead engagement partner through to the firm’s chief executive; and
(d) a person who provided quality control for the audit engagement.

108 An individual may have fully complied with Rule 204.4(16)(a) and (b) in accepting employment with an entity, and subsequently thereto, the entity merged with or was acquired by another entity resulting in that individual having a financial reporting oversight role of a combined entity which is audited by the firm in which the individual was previously
an employee or a partner. In such a circumstance, unless the employment offer was accepted in contemplation of the merger or acquisition, the individual or the entity could not be expected to know that the employment decision could result in a threat to independence. In all such cases the safeguard of informing the audit committee should be applied.

109 For the purposes of Rule 204.4(16)(a) audit procedures are deemed to have commenced for the current audit engagement period on the day after the financial statements for the previous period are filed with the relevant securities regulator or stock exchange.

F. RECENT SERVICE WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

110 A self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat may exist when a former officer or director of an assurance client or related entity or a person who has been in a financial reporting oversight role becomes a part of the engagement team for that assurance client.

111 Rule 204.4(17)(a) provides that a member or student may not participate on the engagement team for an assurance client if such person served as an officer or director of the client or had been in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the engagement during the period covered by the assurance report or the engagement period.

111A If, prior to the period covered by an assurance report, a person on the engagement team served as an officer or director of the assurance client or a related entity, or had been in a position to exert significant influence over the subject matter of the assurance engagement, a self-interest, self-review or familiarity threat may exist. For example, such a threat will exist if a decision made or work performed by that individual in the prior period, while employed by the client, is to be evaluated in the current period as part of the assurance engagement. The significance of the threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the position the individual held;
- the length of time since the individual left the position; and
- the role of the individual on the engagement team.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- involving another member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work of the particular person or advise as necessary; or
- discussing the issue with the audit committee.

112 Rule 204.4(17(b) provides that, except in specific circumstances, a member or firm may not perform an audit or review engagement for an entity if, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm or the engagement period, the member or firm has loaned a member of the firm or a network firm to the entity or a related entity.
G. SERVING AS AN OFFICER OR A MEMBER OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

113 Rule 204.4(18)(a) provides that a member or employee of a firm may not serve as an officer or director of an assurance client or a related entity. In the case of an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity, this prohibition is extended to members and employees of network firms by Rule 204.4(18)(b). However, a partner or employee of the firm or a network firm may serve as company secretary for an assurance client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity where permitted by local law, professional rules or practice, and when the duties and functions undertaken are limited to those of a routine and formal administrative nature. In the case of an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, Rule 204.4(19) provides that a member or employee of a firm or a network firm may not serve as an officer or director of the reporting issuer or listed entity client or a related entity. The exception for serving as company secretary, where permitted by local law, professional rules or practice, and when the duties and functions undertaken are limited to those of a routine and formal administrative nature, is not extended to include such audit engagements.

Company secretary

114 The position of company secretary has different implications in different jurisdictions. The duties of company secretary may range from administrative duties such as personnel management and the maintenance of company records and registers, to duties as diverse as ensuring that the company complies with regulations or providing advice on corporate governance matters. Generally this position is seen to imply a close degree of association with the entity and may create self-review and advocacy threats.

115 If a partner or employee of a firm serves as company secretary for an assurance client or related entity, the self-review and advocacy threats created would generally be so significant that safeguards are unlikely to be available to reduce the threats to an acceptable level. Similarly, if a partner or employee of a firm or network firm serves as company secretary for an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity or a related entity, the self-review and advocacy threats created would generally be so significant that safeguards are unlikely to be available to reduce the threats to an acceptable level. However, when the practice of acting as company secretary is specifically permitted under local law, professional rules or practice, the duties and functions undertaken should be limited to those of a routine and formal administrative nature such as the preparation of minutes and maintenance of statutory returns.

116 Routine administrative services to support a company secretarial function or advisory work in relation to company secretarial administration matters is generally not perceived to impair independence, provided client management makes all relevant decisions.

H. RELIGIOUS ORGANIZATIONS

117 A threat to independence is ordinarily not created when a person on the engagement team, or any of the person’s immediate or close family members, belongs to a religious organization that is an assurance client provided the person on the engagement team, or the immediate or close family member:

(a) does not serve on the religious organization’s governing body; and
(b) does not have the right or responsibility to exercise significant influence over the financial or accounting policies of the religious organization or any of its associates.
I. Intentionally left blank

J. LONG ASSOCIATION OF SENIOR PERSONNEL WITH AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

The use of the same senior personnel on the engagement team on an assurance engagement over a long period of time may create a familiarity threat. The significance of such a threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the length of time that the particular individual has been on the engagement team;
- the role of that individual on the engagement team;
- the structure of the firm; and
- the nature of the assurance engagement including the complexity of the subject matter and degree of professional judgment needed.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- discussing the matter with the audit committee;
- replacing the senior personnel on the engagement team;
- involving an additional member of the firm who is not, and never was, on the engagement team to review the work done by the particular individual, or advise as necessary;
- the member or firm is subject to external practice inspection; or
- an independent internal quality review of the assurance work performed by a member of the firm who was not part of the engagement team.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rule 204.4(20)(a) provides that a member may not continue as the lead engagement partner, or the engagement quality control reviewer, with respect to the audit of the financial statements of a reporting issuer or listed entity for more than seven years in total and may not thereafter participate in an audit of the financial statements of the entity until a further five years have elapsed.

Rule 204.4(20)(b) provides that a member, other than a lead engagement partner or engagement quality control reviewer, may not continue as a key audit partner on the engagement team with respect to the audit of the financial statements of a reporting issuer or listed entity for a period of more than seven years in total and may not thereafter participate in an audit of the financial statements of the entity until a further two years have elapsed.

In the case of a reporting issuer that is a mutual fund Rules 204.4(20(a) and (b) extend the partner rotation requirements and restrictions described above to the audits of financial statements of mutual funds that are reporting issuers within the same mutual fund complex, as defined.

Rule 204.4(20) provides that an audit partner who has completed the permitted term as a lead engagement partner, engagement quality control reviewer or other key audit partner may not participate in the audit until further prescribed time periods have elapsed.
Accordingly, such partners may not:

- provide services pertaining directly to the audit or to a review of interim financial statements;
- provide quality control for either such engagement;
- consult with the engagement team or the client regarding technical or industry-specific issues, transactions or events; or
- otherwise directly influence the outcome of any such engagement.

However, such partners may be consulted for the purpose of transferring knowledge of the client to the engagement team.

When an audit client becomes a reporting issuer or listed entity, the length of time a key audit partner has served in that capacity should be considered in determining when the partner must be replaced on the engagement team. However, Rule 204.4(20)(c) provides that if a key audit partner has served in that capacity for five or more years at the time the client becomes a reporting issuer or listed entity, such person may continue in that capacity for two more years.

K. AUDIT COMMITTEE PRIOR APPROVAL OF SERVICES TO A REPORTING ISSUER OR LISTED ENTITY AUDIT CLIENT

Rule 204.4(21) provides that a member or firm may not provide a service to a reporting issuer or listed entity, that is an audit client, or to a subsidiary thereof, unless the audit committee of the client pre-approves such service. The requirement applies to all audit and non-audit services. For the purpose of Rule 204.4(21) the audit committee recommendation to the entity's board of directors that the particular audit firm be the entity's auditor will be considered to be the approval of the audit service. Subject to paragraph 125, all non-audit services for the reporting issuer or listed entity and its subsidiaries must be specifically pre-approved by the audit committee.

The audit committee may establish policies and procedures for pre-approval provided that they are detailed as to the particular services and designed to safeguard the independence of the member and the firm. For example, one or more audit committee members who are independent board directors may pre-approve the service provided decisions made by the designated audit committee members are reported to the full audit committee.

Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(21), audit committee pre-approval of services other than assurance services provided to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or to a subsidiary of the client, is not required where all such services that have not been pre-approved:

(a) do not represent more than five per cent of total revenues paid by the audit client to the member, the firm and network firms in the fiscal year in which the services are provided;
(b) were not recognized as non-audit services at the time of the engagement; and
(c) are promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee and the audit committee or one or more designated representatives approves the services prior to the completion of the audit.

For the purposes of Rule 204.4(21) audit services include all those services performed to discharge responsibilities to provide an opinion on the financial statements of the reporting issuer or listed entity. For example, in connection with some audit engagements, a tax
partner may be involved in reviewing the tax accrual of the client. Since it is a necessary part of the audit process, the activity constitutes an audit service. Similarly, complex accounting issues may require consultation with a national office technical partner to reach an audit judgment. That consultation, being a necessary part of the audit process, also constitutes an audit service, and as such will be considered to have been pre-approved by the audit committee whether or not the firm charges separately for it. These examples contrast with a situation where a client is evaluating a proposed transaction and requests the member, the firm or a network firm to evaluate it and, after research and consultation, the member, firm or network firm provides an answer to the client and bills for those services. Such services would not be considered to be audit services and, therefore, will not be considered to have been pre-approved with the audit service.

L. PROVISION OF NON-ASSURANCE SERVICES TO AN ASSURANCE CLIENT

General provisions

127 Firms have traditionally provided to their clients a range of non-assurance services that are consistent with their skills and expertise. The provision of such a non-assurance service is not subject to the requirements of Rule 204.1 and, accordingly, does not require independence on the part of a member or firm. However, the provision of such a non-assurance service may create a self-interest, self-review or advocacy threat that impacts the independence of the member or firm with respect to the provision of an assurance or specified auditing procedures service for which independence is required by Rule 204.1. Consequently, before a firm accepts an engagement to provide a non-assurance service, it should evaluate the significance of any threat to independence, in relation to an existing assurance service, that may be created by providing the non-assurance service. When such a threat is other than clearly insignificant, the non-assurance engagement should be declined unless appropriate safeguards can be applied to eliminate the threat or threats or reduce them to an acceptable level. Specific circumstances in which adequate safeguards do not exist to eliminate or reduce such a threat to independence to an acceptable level are set out in Rules 204.4(22) to (34) as prohibitions.

128 Subject to the specific prohibitions set out in Rules 204.4(22) to (34), a firm or a member of a firm may provide a non-assurance service to an assurance client or related entity, provided that any threats to independence have been reduced to an acceptable level by safeguards, such as:

- policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm from making management decisions for the client, or assuming responsibility for such decisions;
- discussing independence issues related to the provision of non-assurance services with the audit committee;
- policies within the assurance client regarding the oversight responsibility for provision of non-assurance services by the firm;
- involving another member of the firm who is not on the engagement team to advise on any impact of the non-assurance service on the independence of the persons on the engagement team and the firm;
- involving a professional accountant from outside of the firm to provide assurance on a discrete aspect of the assurance engagement;
- obtaining the client’s acknowledgement of responsibility for the results of the non-assurance service performed by the firm;
- disclosing to the audit committee the nature of the non-assurance service and extent of fees charged; or
• arranging that the members of the firm providing the non-assurance service do not participate on the assurance engagement team.

Performance of management functions

Rule 204.4(22) provides that, during the period covered by the assurance report or the engagement period, a member of a firm may not make management decisions or perform management functions for an assurance client that is not an audit or review client or related entity unless the management decision or management function is not related to the subject matter of the assurance engagement that is performed by the member or firm. Rule 204.4(22)(b) provides that in the case of an audit or review client a member of the firm or a network firm may not make any management decision or perform any management function for the client or a related entity during either the engagement period or the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm. Activities that would constitute a management decision or function include:

(a) authorizing, approving, executing or consummating a transaction;
(b) having or exercising authority on behalf of the client;
(c) determining which recommendation of the member or firm should be implemented; or
(d) reporting in a management role to those charged with governance of the client or related entity.

Obtaining an understanding of the client’s internal controls is required by generally accepted auditing standards. Members often become involved in diagnosing, assessing and recommending to management ways in which internal controls can be improved or strengthened. Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(22) the independence of a member or firm would not be impaired by the provision of services to assess the effectiveness of the internal controls of an assurance client or a related entity and to recommend improvements in the design and implementation of internal controls and risk management control.

Rebuttable presumption – not subject to audit procedures

Rules 204.4(24) to (28) set out non-audit services that may not be provided during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or during the engagement period to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of any such service will not be subject to audit procedures during the audit of the client’s financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of such services will be subject to audit procedures. Materiality is not an appropriate basis upon which to overcome this presumption. For example, determining whether a subsidiary, division or other unit of the consolidated entity is material is a matter of audit judgment. Therefore, the determination of whether to apply detailed audit procedures to a unit of a consolidated entity is, in itself, an audit procedure.

Preparation of accounting records and financial statements

General provisions

It is the responsibility of management to ensure that accounting records are kept and financial statements are prepared, although in discharging its responsibility management...
may request a member or firm to provide assistance.

135 Assisting an audit or review client or a related entity in matters such as preparing accounting records or financial statements will create a self-review threat when the financial statements are subsequently audited or reviewed by the member or firm. The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level.

136 Rule 204.4(23) provides that a member, or a member of a firm or network firm, may not perform any of the following activities:

(a) preparing, or changing a journal entry, determining or changing an account code, or a classification for a transaction or preparing or changing another accounting record for the entity or a related entity, that affects the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm without obtaining the approval of management of the entity; and

(b) preparing or changing a source document or originating data in respect of any transaction underlying the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

Whether or not the approval of the management of the entity is obtained, it is not permissible for a member of the firm or a network firm to prepare a source document or originating data, or to make a change to such a document or data, that affects the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

137 A source document is an initial recording or original evidence of a transaction. Examples of source documents are purchase orders, payroll time cards, customer orders, invoices, disbursement approvals, signed cheques and written contracts. Source documents are often followed by the creation of additional records and reports, such as trial balances, account reconciliations and aged account receivable listings, which do not constitute source documents or initial recordings. Source documents may also be preceded by documents containing calculations and advice, such as bonus calculations for tax purposes, ceiling test calculations in the oil and gas industry and sample wording for clauses in a contract that will be prepared by the client’s lawyers. The creation of such additional records, reports and documents would not constitute the creation of source documents.

138 Notwithstanding Rules 204.4(23) and (24), the financial statement audit and review process involves extensive dialogue between persons on the engagement team and management of the audit or review client. During this process, management will often request and receive input regarding such matters as accounting principles and financial statement disclosure, the appropriateness of controls and the methods used in determining the stated amounts of assets and liabilities. The provision of technical assistance of this nature for an audit or review client is an appropriate method of promoting the fair presentation of the financial statements. The provision of such advice, per se, does not generally threaten the member’s or the firm’s independence. Other services that are usually a part of the audit or review process and that do not, under normal circumstances, threaten independence include:

- assisting with resolving account reconciliation problems;
- analyzing and accumulating information for regulatory reporting;
- assisting in the preparation of consolidated financial statements (including assisting in the translation of local statutory accounts to comply with group accounting policies and transition to a different reporting framework such as International
Financial Reporting Standards);
- assisting the drafting of disclosure items;
- proposing adjusting journal entries; and
- providing assistance and advice in the preparation of local statutory accounts of subsidiary entities.

139 A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm assists in the preparation of subject matter other than financial statements and subsequently provides assurance thereon. For example, a self-review threat will exist if a member or firm develops and prepares prospective financial information and subsequently provides assurance on it. Consequently, a member or firm should evaluate the significance of any self-review threat created by the provision of such a service. If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level.

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities

140 Subject to Rule 204.4(23) a member, firm or network firm may provide an audit or review client or related entity that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity with accounting and bookkeeping services provided that any resulting self-review threat so created is reduced to an acceptable level. Examples of such services include:
- recording transactions for which management has determined or approved the appropriate account classification;
- posting transactions to the general ledger;
- preparing financial statements;
- drafting notes to the financial statements;
- posting journal entries to the trial balance;
- performing payroll services which do not involve having custody of the client's or related entity's assets; and
- preparing tax receipts for charitable donations or tax information returns, such as T4 slips.

Client approval of journal entries

141 A member, firm or network firm may prepare journal entries for an audit or review client or related entity that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity provided management approves and takes responsibility for such journal entries. In obtaining this approval, the member, firm or network firm may choose to obtain approval for each journal entry or, alternatively, to obtain approval following a thorough review of the completed financial statements with management. This approval may also be obtained through the management representation letter.

Evaluation of significance of threats

142 The significance of a threat created by providing accounting and bookkeeping services to an audit or review client or related entity that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity should be evaluated. The significance of such a threat will depend upon factors such as:
- the degree of involvement of the member or firm;
- the complexity of the transactions to be accounted for; and
- the extent of professional judgment required in selecting the appropriate accounting
treatment.

If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- making arrangements so that such services are not performed by a person on the engagement team;
- requiring the client or related entity to create the source data for the accounting entries;
- requiring the client or related entity to develop the underlying assumptions;
- obtaining the views of another professional accountant;
- arranging for another firm to review a significant accounting treatment; or
- discussing a significant accounting treatment with the Director of Professional Standards or other Institute staff member.

Complex transactions

Preparing the journal entries for a complex transaction would likely create a self-review threat the significance of which could only be reduced to an acceptable level by applying safeguards that involve consultation with others, for example by:

- obtaining the views of another professional accountant;
- arranging for another firm to review a significant accounting treatment; or
- discussing the proposed accounting treatment with the Director of Professional Standards or other Institute staff member.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rule 204.4(24) provides that, in other than emergency situations, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or of a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of these services will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. Bookkeeping and other such services include:

- maintaining or preparing the entity’s, or a related entity’s, accounting records;
- preparing the financial statements on which the audit report is provided or that form the basis of the financial statements on which the audit report is provided; and
- preparing or originating source data underlying such financial statements.

In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the bookkeeping or other services will be subject to audit procedures.

Rule 204.4(24) permits the provision of such accounting or bookkeeping services by a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm in the event of emergency situations provided that the requirements Rule 204.4(24) are met. Such emergency situations might arise when, due to events beyond the control of the member or firm and the client or related entity,
(a) there are no viable alternative resources to those of the member or firm with the necessary knowledge of the client’s or related entity’s business to assist in the timely preparation of its accounting records or financial statements, and

(b) a restriction on the member’s or firm’s ability to provide the services would result in significant difficulties for the client or related entity, for example, as might result from a failure to meet regulatory reporting requirements, in the withdrawal of credit lines, or would threaten the going concern status of the client or related entity. Significant difficulties would not be created simply by virtue of the fact that the client or related entity would be required to incur additional costs to engage the services of an alternative service provider.

Members and firms are also required by Rule 204.5(b) to document both the rationale supporting the determination that the situation constitutes an emergency and compliance with the provisions of subparagraphs (i) through (iv) of Rule 204.4(24).

Members, firms and network firms should fully assess and consider the circumstances that would constitute an emergency situation. Emergencies situations are rare, non-recurring and would arise only when clearly beyond the control of the member or firm and the client or related entity. Caution should be exercised when deciding to undertake services under this exception.

Valuation services

General provisions

145 A valuation service involves the making of assumptions with respect to future events and the application of certain methodologies and techniques, in order to compute an amount or provide an opinion with respect to a specific value or range of values, for a business as a whole, an intangible or tangible asset or a liability.

146 When a member or firm performs a valuation that forms part of the subject matter of an assurance engagement that is not an audit or review engagement, the firm should consider whether there is a self-review threat. If such a threat exists, and it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level.

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities

147 Unless a valuation is performed for tax purposes only and relates to amounts that will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm only through accounting entries related to taxation, Rule 204.4(25)(a) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review or the engagement period, a member, a firm, a network firm or a member of a firm or a network firm may not provide a valuation service to an entity or a related entity if the valuation involves a significant degree of subjectivity and relates to amounts that are material to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

147A Members and firms should refer to Council Interpretation 189A when a valuation service is performed for an audit or review client or a related entity for tax purposes only and relates to amounts that will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm only through accounting entries related to taxation.
Performing a valuation service for audit or review client or a related entity that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity will create a self-review threat when the valuation resulting from the service is incorporated into the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm. The significance of such a threat should be evaluated. The significance will depend on factors such as:

- the materiality of the results of the valuation service;
- the extent of the client’s or related entity’s knowledge, experience and ability to evaluate the issues concerned, and the extent of the client’s or related entity’s involvement in determining and approving significant matters of judgment;
- the degree to which established methodologies and professional guidelines are applied when performing the particular valuation service;
- the degree of subjectivity inherent in the item concerned where the valuation involves standard or established methodologies;
- the reliability and extent of the underlying data;
- the degree of dependence on future events of a nature which could create significant volatility in the amounts involved; and
- the extent and clarity of the financial statement disclosures.

If the threat is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- involving an additional professional accountant who was not a member of the engagement team to review the valuation work or otherwise advise as necessary;
- confirming with the client or related entity its understanding of the underlying assumptions of the valuation and the methodology to be used and obtaining approval for their use;
- obtaining the client’s or related entity’s acknowledgement of responsibility for the results of the valuation work performed by the firm or network firm; or
- arranging that members of the firm or network firm providing such services do not participate on the engagement team.

Certain valuations do not involve a significant degree of subjectivity. This is likely the case where the underlying assumptions are either established by law or regulation, or are widely accepted and when the techniques and methodologies to be used are based on generally accepted standards or prescribed by law or regulation. In such circumstances, the results of a valuation performed by two or more parties are not likely to be materially different.

The independence of a member or firm will not be impaired when:

- the firm’s valuation specialist reviews the work of an audit or review client or a related entity or a specialist employed by the client or related entity, provided the client, related entity or specialist supplies the technical expertise that the client or related entity uses in determining the required amounts recorded in the financial statements. In such circumstances there will be no self-review threat because a client’s or related entity’s management or a third-party is the source of the financial information subject to audit or review by the member or firm; or
- the valuation service is provided for non-financial reporting purposes only, for example, transfer pricing studies or other valuations that are performed solely for tax purposes.
Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

151 Unless the valuation is performed for tax purposes only and relates to amounts that will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm only through accounting entries related to taxation, Rule 204.4(25)(b) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide a valuation service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or to a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the valuation service will be subject to audit procedures.

151A Members and firms should refer to Council Interpretation 189A when a valuation service is performed for a client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or for a related entity, for tax purposes only and relates to amounts that will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm only through accounting entries related to taxation.

Actuarial services to a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client

152 Rule 204.4(26) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not perform an actuarial service for an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or for a related entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the actuarial service will be subject to audit procedures.

153 For the purposes of Rule 204.4(26), actuarial services include the determination of an amount to be recorded in the client’s financial statements and related accounts, except for: services that involve assisting the client in understanding the methods, models, assumptions and inputs used in determining such amounts; and advising management on the appropriate actuarial methods and assumptions that will be used in the actuarial valuations. In addition, the firm may use its own actuary to assist in conducting the audit if the client’s actuary or a third-party actuary provides management with its actuarial capabilities.

Internal audit services to an audit or review client

General provisions

154 A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm provides internal audit services to an audit or review client or a related entity. Such services may comprise an extension of the firm’s audit service beyond the requirements of generally accepted auditing standards, assistance in the performance of the client’s or related entity’s internal audit activities, or outsourcing of the activities. In evaluating any threat to independence, the nature of the service should be considered.

155 Services involving an extension of the procedures required to conduct an audit or review in accordance with the CICA Handbook – Assurance will not be considered to impair independence with respect to an audit or review client provided that a member of the firm
or network firm does not act or appear to act in the capacity of the client’s or related entity’s management.

156 During the course of an audit or review engagement the engagement team considers the client’s internal controls and, as a result, may make recommendations for its improvement. This is part of an audit or review engagement and is not considered to be an internal audit service.

157 Intentionally left blank.

158 Intentionally left blank.

159 In addition to complying with the requirements of Rule 204.4(27)(a), a member or firm should also consider whether internal audit services should be provided to an audit or review client or a related entity only by a member or members of the firm not involved in the audit or review engagement and with different reporting lines within the firm.

160 Performing a significant portion of the audit or review client’s or related entity’s internal audit activities may create a self-review threat and a member, firm or network firm should consider that possibility and proceed with caution before taking on such an activity.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

161 Rule 204.4(27)(b) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide an internal audit service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or to a related entity, that relates to the client’s, or the related entity’s, internal accounting controls, financial systems or financial statements, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of the service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the financial statements. In determining whether such a conclusion is reasonable, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the internal audit service will be subject to audit procedures.

162 Rule 204.4(27)(b) does not prohibit a member, firm or network firm from providing a nonrecurring service to evaluate a discrete item or program, if the service is not in substance the outsourcing of an internal audit function. For example, the member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm of a network firm, may conduct a nonrecurring specified auditing procedures engagement related to the internal controls of an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity or a related entity.

Information technology system services to an audit or review client

General provisions

163 The provision of services by a member, firm or network firm to an audit or review client or a related entity that involve the design or implementation of financial information technology systems that are, or will be, used to generate information forming part of the client’s or the related entity’s financial statements may create a self-review threat.

There are, however, some information technology systems services that may not create a threat to independence, provided that the member or firm does not make a management...
decision or perform a management function for the client or the related entity. Such services include the following:

(a) designing or implementing information technology systems that are unrelated to internal controls over financial reporting;
(b) designing or implementing information technology systems that do not generate information forming a significant part of the accounting records or financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm;
(c) implementing “off-the-shelf” accounting or financial information reporting software that was not developed by the firm if the customization required to meet the client’s or related entity’s needs is not significant; and
(d) evaluating and making recommendations with respect to a system designed, implemented or operated by another service provider or the client or related entity.

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities

In addition to complying with the requirements of Rule 204.4(28)(a), a member or firm should also consider whether financial information systems design and implementation services should be provided to an audit or review client or related entity only by members of the firm who are not involved in the audit or review engagement and with different reporting lines within the firm.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rule 204.4(28)(b) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not design or implement a financial information system for an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, unless it is reasonable to conclude that the results of such service will not be subject to audit procedures during an audit of the client’s financial statements. Such services involve:

(a) directly or indirectly operating, or supervising the operation of, the entity’s, or a related entity’s, information system
(b) directly or indirectly managing the entity’s or a related entity’s local area network; or
(c) designing or implementing a hardware or software system that aggregates source data underlying the financial statements or generates information that is significant to the entity’s, or a related entity’s, financial statements or other financial information systems taken as a whole.

In determining whether it is reasonable to conclude that the results of such service will not be subject to audit procedures, there is a rebuttable presumption that the results of the financial information systems design and implementation service will be subject to audit procedures.
Information will be considered to be significant if it is likely to be material to the financial statements. Since materiality determinations may not be complete before the financial statements are prepared, the audit client or related entity and the member or firm should evaluate the general nature of the information as well as system output during the period of the audit engagement.

Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(28), a member, a firm or a network firm may:

- design or implement a hardware or software system that is unrelated to the financial statements or accounting records of the reporting issuer or listed entity, or a related entity;
- as part of the audit, or another assurance engagement, evaluate and make recommendations to management on the internal controls of a system as it is being designed, implemented or operated; or
- make recommendations on internal control matters to management or other service provider in conjunction with the design and installation of a system by another service provider.

**Litigation support services to an audit or review client**

*General provisions*

Litigation support services include such activities as acting as an expert witness, calculating estimated damages or other amounts that might become receivable or payable as the result of litigation or other legal dispute, and assistance with document management and retrieval in relation to a legal dispute or litigation.

A self-review threat may exist when a member, firm or network firm provides to an audit or review client or related entity, litigation support services that include the estimation of the possible outcome of a dispute or litigation and thereby affects the amounts or disclosures to be reflected in the client's or related entity's financial statements. The significance of any such threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the nature of the engagement;
- the materiality of the amounts involved; and
- the degree of subjectivity inherent in the matter concerned.

The member or firm should evaluate the significance of any threat so created and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- policies and procedures to prohibit individuals who assist the client from making management decisions on the client's or related entity's behalf;
- using a member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team to perform the litigation support service; or
- the involvement of others, such as independent specialists.

If adequate safeguards are not available to reduce a threat to an acceptable level the member, firm or network firm should decline the engagement.

*Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities*

Rule 204.4(29)(a) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial
Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

174A Rule 204.4(29)(b) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide a litigation support service for an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or for a related entity, or for a legal representative thereof.

174B The effect of Rule 204.4(29) is to prohibit, except for the specified circumstances set out in paragraph 202.4(29)(a), a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, from providing specialized knowledge, experience or expertise to advocate or support the audit client’s positions, or the positions of a related entity, in an adversarial or similar proceeding such as an investigation, a litigation matter, or a legislative or administrative tribunal. Litigation or other matters frequently escalate to a level, such as a civil, criminal, regulatory, administrative or legislative proceeding or investigation, which creates a self-review or advocacy threat which cannot be reduced to an acceptable level by available safeguards. Accordingly, it is particularly important for members and firms to consider initially, and thereafter reconsider periodically, whether the matter in support of which the service is provided is likely to escalate, or has escalated, to such a level. In addition, members and firms should discuss, with the audit committee, the possibility that a matter could escalate to such a level and the consequential impact on the member’s or firm’s ability to continue to provide the litigation support service or to continue to perform the audit or review engagement.

175 Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(29), a member, a firm or a network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may be engaged by an audit committee of an audit or review client to assist it in fulfilling its responsibilities to conduct its own investigation of a potential accounting impropriety. For example, if the audit committee is concerned about the accuracy of the inventory records at a subsidiary, it may engage the member, the firm or the network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, to conduct a thorough inspection and analysis of these records, the physical inventory at the subsidiary and related matters without impairing independence. This type of engagement may include forensic or other fact-finding work that results in the issuance of a report to the audit client. It will generally require performing procedures that are consistent with, but more detailed or more comprehensive than, those required by generally accepted auditing standards.

176 In an investigation or proceeding for an audit or review client, or for a related entity, the member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may provide an account or testimony with respect to a matter of fact, such as describing the work performed by the member’s firm or the predecessor auditor. The member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or network firm, may explain the positions taken or the conclusions reached during the performance of any service provided for the audit or review client.
Legal services to an audit or review client

General provisions

177 A legal service is any service that may only be provided by a person licensed, admitted, or otherwise qualified to practice law in the jurisdiction in which the service is provided. However, where a jurisdiction outside of Canada requires a service to be provided by a person licensed, admitted, or otherwise qualified to practice law in that jurisdiction and the same service could be provided in the relevant jurisdiction in Canada by a person not licensed, admitted, or otherwise qualified to practice law, such a service is not considered to be a legal service. Legal services encompass a wide and varied range of corporate and commercial services, including contract support, conduct of litigation, mergers and acquisition advice and support and the provision of assistance to client’s internal legal departments.

178 Threats to independence created by the provision of legal services to an audit or review client or related entity should be considered based on:

- the nature of the service to be provided (for example, advocacy as opposed to other legal services);
- whether the service provider is separate from the engagement team; and
- the materiality of any pertinent matter in relation to the financial statements that are subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

179 The provision of a legal service which involves matters that would not be expected to have a material effect on the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm is not considered to create an unacceptable threat to independence with respect to the engagement to perform the audit or review of those financial statements.

180 The provision of a legal service to support an audit or review client or related entity in the execution of a transaction (e.g., contract support, legal advice, legal due diligence and restructuring) may create a self-review threat. The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- using members of the firm who are not on the engagement team to provide the service;
- ensuring the client or related entity makes the ultimate decision in relation to the advice provided; or
- ensuring the service involves the execution of what has been decided by the client or related entity in relation to the transaction.

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities

181 Rule 204.4(30) provides that a member, firm or network firm may not, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or review or the engagement period, provide a legal service to an audit or review client or related entity in the resolution of a dispute or litigation in circumstances where the matters in dispute or subject to litigation are material in relation to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

182 The provision of a legal service to assist an audit or review client or related entity in the resolution of a dispute or litigation may create an advocacy or self-review threat. When a
A member, firm or network firm is asked to act in an advocacy role for the client or related entity in the resolution of a dispute or litigation in circumstances where the amounts involved are not material to the client’s financial statements, the significance of any resulting threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to eliminate it or reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- policies and procedures to prohibit members of the firm or network firm from assisting the client or related entity in making management decisions on behalf of the client or related entity; or
- using members of the firm who are not on the engagement team to perform the particular legal service.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rule 204.4(31) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide a legal service to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or to a related entity.

Human resource services for an assurance client

General provisions

The recruitment of managers, executives or directors for an assurance client, where the person recruited will be in a position to affect the subject matter of the assurance engagement, may create a current or future self-interest, familiarity or intimidation threat. The significance of such a threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the role of the person to be recruited; and
- the nature of the assistance sought.

The significance of any such threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. In all cases, the firm should not make management decisions and the client should make the hiring decision.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rule 204.4(32) provides that, during either the period covered by the financial statements subject to audit or the engagement period, a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm or a network firm, may not provide any of the following services to an audit client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, or to a related entity:

(a) searching for or seeking out prospective candidates for management, executive, or director positions;
(b) engaging in psychological testing, or other formal testing or evaluation programs;
(c) undertaking reference checks of prospective candidates for an executive or director position;
(d) acting as a negotiator or mediator with respect to employees or future employees with respect to any condition of employment, including position, status or title, compensation, or fringe benefits; or
(e) recommending or advising with respect to hiring a specific candidate for a specific job.

Notwithstanding Rule 204.4(32) a member, firm or network firm, or a member of the firm
or a network firm may, upon request of the audit client or a related entity, interview candidates and advise the client or related entity on the candidate’s competence for financial accounting, administrative or control positions.

**Corporate finance and similar services**

Rule 204.4(33) sets out in paragraphs (a) to (e) the corporate finance and similar services which a member or firm may not provide to an audit or review client or a related entity.

Where a member or firm has provided advice on corporate finance matters to such a client or entity, Rule 204.4(33)(b) prohibits the member or firm from performing the audit or review engagement if:

(a) the effectiveness of the advice depends on a particular accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements;
(b) the outcome or consequences of the advice has or will have a material effect on the financial statements; and
(c) the engagement team has reasonable doubt as to the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework.

Where the efficacy of implementing such corporate finance advice depends upon a particular accounting treatment or presentation, there may be pressure to adopt an accounting treatment or presentation that is inconsistent with the relevant financial reporting framework. If such an inconsistency were to exist, the member or firm would be prohibited from performing the audit or review engagement. Accordingly, where the circumstances set out in (a) exist the member or firm must review the materiality of the effect of the advice and the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment and presentation with the audit or review engagement team as soon as possible prior to completion of the corporate finance advisory service.

Corporate finance services other than those that are prohibited by Rule 204.4(33) may create an advocacy or self-review threat that may be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Examples of such services include:

- assisting a client in developing corporate strategies;
- assisting a client in obtaining bank financing by explaining the financial statements to the bank;
- assisting in identifying or introducing a client to possible sources of capital that meet the client specifications or criteria; and
- providing structuring advice and assisting a client in analyzing the accounting effects of proposed transactions.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce the threat to an acceptable level. Such a safeguard might be using members of the firm who are not part of the engagement team to provide the services.

**Tax services**

*General provisions*

Tax services usually include:

- preparation of tax returns;
• preparation of valuations for tax purposes;
• provision of tax planning and similar tax advisory services on such matters as how to structure business affairs in a tax efficient manner or on the application of tax laws or regulations;
• provision of tax advocacy services with respect to tax disputes; or
• preparation of tax calculations for the purpose of preparing accounting entries.

188A The provision of tax services may create a self-review threat where the advice or other service affects or will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm, or an advocacy threat where the services involve resolution of a tax dispute with tax authorities. The existence and significance of any threat will depend on factors such as:

• the nature of the tax service that is provided;
• the degree of subjectivity involved in determining the appropriate treatment of tax advice in the financial statements;
• the extent to which the outcome of the tax service has or will have a material effect on the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm;
• the level of tax expertise of the client’s employees;
• the extent to which the advice is supported by tax law or regulation, other precedent or established practice; and
• whether the tax treatment is supported by a private ruling or has otherwise been cleared by the tax authority before the preparation of the financial statements.

Providing tax planning advice where the advice is clearly supported by tax authorities or other precedent, by established practice or has a basis in tax law that is likely to prevail does not ordinarily create a threat to independence, unless the circumstances described in Rule 204.4(34)(a) exist.

188B The significance of any threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Examples of such safeguards include:

• using professionals who are not members of the assurance engagement team to perform the tax service;
• having a tax professional, who was not involved in providing the tax service, advise the assurance engagement team on the service and review the financial statement treatment;
• obtaining advice on the service from an external tax professional; and
• obtaining pre-clearance or advice from the tax authorities.

Provision of specific tax services
Preparation of tax returns

189 Tax return preparation services may involve assisting an audit or review client with its tax reporting obligations by drafting and completing information, including the amount of tax due, as reported on prescribed forms, and as required to be submitted to the applicable tax authorities. Such tax returns are subject to audit or other review by tax authorities. Accordingly, the provision of such services does not ordinarily create a threat to independence provided that management takes responsibility for the returns including
any significant judgments made.

**Preparation of valuations for tax purposes**

189A A firm may be requested to perform a valuation to assist an audit or review client or a related entity with its tax reporting obligations or for tax planning purposes.

(a) Rule 204.4(25) permits the provision of certain valuation services for tax purposes only. Where the valuation is performed for tax purposes only and the valuation relates to amounts that will affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm only through accounting entries related to taxation, a threat to independence would not ordinarily be created if the amounts related to the valuation are not material to such financial statements or if the valuation is subject to external review at the discretion of a tax authority or similar regulatory authority.

(b) However, a valuation service referred to in paragraph (a) that is not subject to such an external review and which results in amounts that are material to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm, may create a threat to independence. The existence and significance of any threat created will depend upon factors such as:

- the extent to which the valuation methodology is supported by tax law or regulation, other precedent or established practice and the degree of subjectivity inherent in the valuation; and
- the reliability and extent of the underlying data.

The significance of any threat created should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level.

**Provision of tax planning or other tax advisory services**

189B Members and firms often provide tax planning or advisory services in order to create tax-efficient outcomes for their clients. Where a member or firm has provided tax planning or other tax advice to an audit or review client or a related entity, Rule 204.4(34)(a) prohibits the member or firm from performing the audit or review engagement if:

(a) the effectiveness of the advice depends on a particular accounting treatment or presentation in the financial statements;
(b) the outcome or consequences of the advice has or will have a material effect on the financial statements; and
(c) the engagement team has reasonable doubt as to the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation under the relevant financial reporting framework.

Where the efficacy of implementing such tax planning or other tax advice depends upon a particular accounting treatment or presentation there may be pressure to adopt an accounting treatment or presentation that is inconsistent with the relevant financial reporting framework. If such an inconsistency were to exist, the member or firm would be prohibited from performing the audit or review engagement. Accordingly, where the circumstances set out in (a) exist, the member or firm must review the materiality of the effect of the tax planning or other tax advice and the appropriateness of the related accounting treatment or presentation with the audit or engagement team as soon as possible prior to completion of the tax planning or other tax advisory service.
Provision of tax advocacy services

Tax advocacy services generally involve assisting a client in the resolution of a disputed tax matter with tax authorities. Such services may involve the provision of litigation support services, legal services or both. Accordingly, members and firms should evaluate whether the provision of such a tax advocacy service involves the provision of a service that would be prohibited pursuant to Rules 204.4(29)(a) or (b), (30) or (31).

Audit or review clients that are not reporting issuers or listed entities

Rules 204.4(29)(a) and (30) do not preclude members and firms from providing a tax advocacy service that involves assistance in the resolution of a dispute with a tax authority to an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity and where the assistance does not involve acting as an advocate before a public tribunal or court.

Members and firms are also not precluded by Rules 204.4(29)(a) and (30) from providing a tax advocacy service that involves assistance in the resolution of a dispute with a tax authority to an audit or review client that is not a reporting issuer or listed entity where the assistance involves acting as an advocate before a public tribunal or court provided that the disputed matter involves amounts that are not material to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

Rules 204.4(29)(a) and (30) do not preclude members and firms from responding to specific requests for information, providing factual accounts or testimony about the work performed or assisting the client in analyzing the tax issues.

Audit clients that are reporting issuers or listed entities

Rules 204.4(29)(b) and (31) do not preclude members and firms from providing a tax advocacy service that involves assistance in the resolution of a dispute with a tax authority to a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client and where the assistance does not involve acting as an advocate before a public tribunal or court.

Pursuant to Rules 204.4(29) and (31), members and firms may not provide a tax advocacy service that involves assistance in the resolution of a dispute with a tax authority to a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client and where the assistance involves acting as an advocate before a public tribunal or court whether or not the amounts involved are material to the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm.

Rules 204.4(29)(b) and (31) do not preclude members and firms from responding to specific requests for information or providing factual accounts or testimony about the work performed.

Members and firms are cautioned that an engagement to provide a permitted tax advocacy service may, in its performance, escalate to a point where the advocacy or self-review threat so created cannot be reduced to an acceptable level by the application of safeguards. Accordingly, the guidance in Council Interpretation 174B applicable to litigation support services may also be helpful when considering the provision of tax advocacy services. One of the factors that impacts the significance of any such threat created is whether the tax advocacy service involves acting as advocate before a public.
tribunal or court, which for this purpose is an adjudicative body that is independent of the tax authority.

Preparation of tax calculations for the purpose of preparing accounting entries for a reporting issuer or listed entity

Rule 204.4(34)(b) permits, in the event of an emergency situation and under specified conditions, a member or firm to prepare tax calculations of current and future tax liabilities or assets for a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client or a related entity for the purpose of preparing accounting entries that are subject to audit by the member or firm. Such emergency situations might arise when, due to events beyond the control of the member or firm and the client or related entity,

(a) there are no viable alternative resources to those of the member or firm with the necessary knowledge of the client’s or related entity’s business to assist in the timely preparation of such tax calculations, and

(b) a restriction on the member’s or firm’s ability to provide the services would result in significant difficulties for the client or related entity, for example, as might result from a failure to meet regulatory reporting requirements, in the withdrawal of credit lines, or would threaten the going concern status of the client or related entity. Significant difficulties would not be created simply by virtue of the fact that the client or related entity would be required to incur additional costs to engage the services of an alternative service provider.

Members and firms are also required by Rule 204.5(c) to document both the rationale supporting the determination that the situation constitutes an emergency and compliance with the provisions of subparagraphs (i) through (iv) of Rule 204.4(34)(b).

Members, firms and network firms should fully assess and consider the circumstances that would constitute an emergency situation. Emergency situations are rare, non-recurring and would arise only when clearly beyond the control of the member or firm and the client or related entity. Caution should be exercised when deciding to undertake services under this exception.

M. FEES AND PRICING

Fees — Pricing

Rule 204.4(36) provides that a member or firm may not provide an assurance service at a fee level that the member or firm knows is significantly lower than that charged by the predecessor member or firm, or contained in other proposals for the engagement, unless the member or firm can demonstrate that the engagement will be performed properly by qualified staff and in accordance with all applicable professional standards.

Fees — Relative size

When the total fees generated from an assurance client represent a significant proportion of the member’s or firm’s total fees, the financial dependence on that client, or group of clients of which it is a part, including the possible concern about losing the client, may create a self-interest threat. The significance of the threat will depend upon factors such as:

- the structure of the firm; and
- whether the member or firm is well established in practice.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such
safeguards might include:

- taking steps to reduce the dependency on the client;
- discussing the extent and nature of fees with the audit committee;
- having firm policies and procedures to monitor and implement quality control of assurance engagements;
- involving another member of the firm who is not on the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary;
- arranging for external quality control reviews; or
- consulting a third party, such as a professional regulatory body or a professional colleague who is not a member of the firm.

### Relative size of fees of a reporting issuer or listed entity audit client

**191A** Rule 204.4(37)(a) provides that, unless specified measures are taken, a member or firm may not perform an audit engagement for a client that is a reporting issuer or listed entity, when, for the two consecutive fiscal years of the firm concluded most recently concluded prior to the date of the financial statements subject to audit by the member or firm, the total revenue, calculated on an accrual basis, for services provided to that client and its related entities represent more than 15% of the total revenue of the firm, calculated on an accrual basis, in each such fiscal year. The measures required to be taken by the rule are:

- disclosing, to the audit committee, that the revenue exceeds the 15% threshold; and
- completion, by another professional accountant who is not a member of the firm, of either a “pre-issuance” or “post-issuance” review of the audit engagement.

The rule requires that either such review be substantially equivalent to an engagement quality control review. In the case of a “pre-issuance” review, the review is to be completed prior to the audit opinion in respect of the financial statements being issued. A “post-issuance” review may be completed after the audit opinion in respect of the financial statements has been issued but prior to the audit opinion on the client’s financial statements for the immediately following fiscal period being issued.

The rule also requires the performance of a “pre-issuance” review if the total revenue, calculated on an accrual basis, for any services provided to the client continue to represent more than 15% of the total revenue of the firm, calculated on an accrual basis, in the firm’s most recently concluded fiscal year.

**191B** Rule 204.4(37)(b) provides that a member or firm may not accept an engagement to perform the “pre-issuance” or “post-issuance” review required by Rule 204.4(37)(a)(ii) if any of the provisions of Rule 204 would prevent the member or firm from performing the audit of the financial statements referred to in Rule 204.4(37)(a).

### Fees — Overdue

**192** A self-interest threat may exist if fees due from an assurance client for professional services remain unpaid for a long time, especially if a significant portion is not paid before the issue of the assurance report for the following year. Generally the payment of such fees should be required before that report is issued. The following safeguards may be applicable:

- discussing the level of outstanding fees with the audit committee; and
• involving another member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team, or a professional colleague who is not a member of the firm, to provide advice or review the work performed.

Members are cautioned that the overdue fees might create the same threats to independence as a loan to the client. Therefore, members should consider whether, because of the significance of such threats, it is appropriate for the firm to continue to provide assurance services to that client.

N. EVALUATION AND COMPENSATION OF ENGAGEMENT TEAM

General provisions

193 Evaluating or compensating a member of the engagement team for an audit or review client for selling non-assurance services to that audit or review client, may create a self-interest threat. The significance of the threat will depend on such factors as:

• the structure of the firm;
• the size of the fee for the assurance service; and
• the size of the fee for the non-assurance service.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

• discussing the nature and extent of the fees with the audit committee;
• having firm policies and procedures to monitor and implement quality control of assurance engagements;
• involving another member of the firm who is not a member of the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary; or
• being subject to external practice inspection.

194 Rule 204.4(38) provides that a member who is a key audit partner with respect to an audit or review engagement may not be evaluated or compensated based on such a partner selling to the audit or review client or a related entity, any product or service other than an assurance service.

195 Notwithstanding the above, such a key audit partner may be evaluated or compensated in relation to performing such services and may share in the profits of the audit practice and the profits of the firm. Such a partner’s evaluation may take into account a number of factors, including the complexity of his or her engagements, the overall management of the relationship with the client including the provision of non-audit services, and the attainment of specific goals for the sale of assurance services to a client for which the partner is a key audit partner or for the sale of any services to a client for which the partner is not a key audit partner.

Members and firms should consider documenting their evaluation and compensation processes and systems in order to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of Rule 204.4(38)

O. CONTINGENT FEES

196 Members and firms are referred to Rule 215 and the related Council Interpretation.
P. GIFTS AND HOSPITALITY

Rule 204.4(39) provides that a firm, or a member or student who is part of an engagement team for an assurance client, may not accept a gift or hospitality, including a product or service discount, from the client unless the gift or hospitality is clearly insignificant to the firm or person as the case may be.

Q. ACTUAL OR THREATENED LITIGATION

Actual, threatened or prospective litigation between a firm or a member of an engagement team and the assurance client or a shareholder or creditor of the client may create a self-interest or intimidation threat. The relationship between client management and persons on the engagement team should be characterized by complete candour and full disclosure regarding all aspects of the client’s business operations and all matters relevant to the client’s financial statements. The firm and the client’s management may be placed in adversarial positions by actual, threatened or prospective litigation, which could impair complete candour and full disclosure, and in this, or other ways, the firm may face a self-interest or intimidation threat. The significance of the threat will depend upon such factors as:

- the materiality of the litigation;
- the nature of the assurance engagement;
- the stage of the litigation; and
- whether the litigation relates to a prior assurance engagement.

The significance of the threat should be evaluated and, if it is other than clearly insignificant, safeguards should be applied to reduce it to an acceptable level. Such safeguards might include:

- disclosing to the audit committee the extent and nature of the litigation;
- removing from the engagement team any person involved in the litigation; or
- involving an additional member of the firm who is not part of the engagement team to review the work done or advise as necessary.

If such safeguards do not reduce the threat to an acceptable level, the only appropriate action is for the member or firm to withdraw from, or refuse to accept, the assurance engagement.

Members are cautioned that actual litigation often results in a conflict of interest between the client and the member or firm which will preclude the member or firm from continuing to provide professional services to the client. Threatened or prospective litigation can have the same result. When faced with threatened, prospective or actual litigation, members and firms should refer to Rule 210 and the related Council Interpretation, and consult with their legal counsel, to determine whether they can continue to provide professional services to the client and, if so, whether there are particular arrangements which should be made with the client.

R. CLIENT MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

Where, as a result of a merger or acquisition, another entity merges with or becomes a related entity of an audit or review client, the existence of a previous or current activity, interest or relationship with the other entity may impair the member’s or firm’s independence in relation to the audit or review engagement. Independence may be impaired either by a specific prohibition established by Rule 204.4 or from threats to
independence which could not be reduced to an acceptable level by applying appropriate safeguards in accordance with Rule 204.3.

200A Rule 204.4(40) permits, in specified circumstances, a member or firm to perform or continue with an audit or review engagement in a situation where the existence of such an activity, interest or relationship would otherwise impair the independence of the member or firm and require the member or firm to resign from the audit or review engagement.

200B Rule 204.4(40)(a)(i) permits the member or firm to perform or continue with the audit or review engagement if the particular activity, interest or relationship is terminated by the effective date of the merger or acquisition.

200C Rule 204.4(40)(a)(ii) permits the member or firm to perform or continue with the audit or review engagement if the particular activity, interest or relationship is terminated as soon as reasonably possible, and in all cases, within six months of the merger or acquisition and if the provisions of Rule 204.4(40)(b) are met. For this purpose, "as soon as reasonably possible" means as soon as practicable, having regard to the nature of the activity, interest or relationship and the consequential impact of the termination of the activity, interest or relationship on the client.

200D Rule 204.4(40)(a)(iii) permits the member or firm to perform or continue with the audit or review engagement if the member or firm has completed a significant amount of work on the audit or review engagement and expects to complete the engagement within a short period of time, does not continue as the audit or review service provider beyond the completion of the engagement, either by the member's or the firm's own choice or by being replaced by the client, and if the provisions of Rule 204.4(40)(b) are met.

200E Where the activity, interest or relationship that would impair independence is not terminated by the effective date of the merger or acquisition, Rule 204.4(40)(b) describes the circumstances in which the member or firm may perform or continue with the audit or review engagement, including a requirement that the member or firm apply an appropriate measure or measures, as discussed with the audit committee. Examples of such a measure or measures are:

- having another public accountant review the audit or review or any relevant non-assurance work as appropriate;
- engaging another firm to evaluate the results of any relevant non-assurance service or to re-perform any relevant non-assurance service to the extent necessary to enable it to take responsibility for the service; and
- having another professional accountant, who is not a member of the firm performing the audit or review engagement, perform a review that is equivalent to an engagement quality control review.

200F Rule 204.4(40)(c) provides that even if all of the other requirements of the rule are met, where an activity, interest or relationship creates such a significant ongoing threat to independence that compliance with paragraphs 204.4(40)(a) and (b) will still not reduce the threat to an acceptable level, the member or firm is required to resign from the particular audit or review engagement. In determining whether the activity, interest or relationship continues to create such a significant threat that the member or firm would be required to resign, consideration should be given to:

(a) the nature and significance of the activity, interest or relationship;
(b) the extent, if any, to which the activity, interest or relationship continues to affect the financial statements subject to audit or review by the member or firm;

(c) the nature and significance of the new relationship with the other entity, for example, whether that other entity becomes a parent, a subsidiary or the client itself; and

(d) the adequacy of the actions taken, as described in Rule 204.4(40)(b), to address the activity, interest or relationship.

In addition, members and firms are reminded of the requirement pursuant to Rule 202.2 to perform professional services with an objective state of mind.

200G Members and firms are also required by Rule 204.5(f) to document:

(a) a description of the activity, interest or relationship that will not be terminated by the effective date of the merger or acquisition and the reasons why it will not be terminated;

(b) the results of the discussion with the audit committee and measures applied to address the threat created by any such activity, interest or relationship; and

(c) the rationale to support the decision of the member or firm.

MEMBERS TO ENSURE COMPLIANCE BY THE FIRM AND BY PERSONS ASSOCIATED WITH THE FIRM

CI 204.7 Members of the firm include all those persons who are associated with the firm in carrying out its activities. Members of the firm, including employees, who are not subject to the Institute’s Rules of Professional Conduct could have an interest or relationship or provide a service that would result in the firm being prohibited from performing a particular engagement. Rule 204.7 requires a member who is a partner or proprietor of a firm to ensure that the firm and all members of the firm, including those who are not members of the Institute, do not have a relationship or interest, do not perform a service and remain free of any influence that would preclude the firm from performing the engagement pursuant to Rules 204.1, 204.3, 204.4 or 204.8.

INSOLVENCY ENGAGEMENTS

Member acting as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, or as liquidator, receiver or receiver/manager.

CI 204.8/1 Rule 204.8 deals with objectivity and independence in insolvency practice. This interpretation sets out how, in Council’s opinion, a reasonable observer might be expected to view certain situations related to insolvency practice.

CI 204.8/2 A firm and a member, or member of the firm, and their respective immediate families, should not acquire directly or indirectly in any manner whatsoever any assets under the administration of the member or firm, provided that any of the foregoing may acquire assets from a retail operation under administration of the member or firm where those assets are available to the general public for sale and that no special treatment or preference over and above that granted to the public is offered to or accepted by the firm, the member or the member of the firm and their respective immediate families.

CI 204.8/3 A member or firm should avoid being placed in a position of conflict of interest...
and, in keeping with this principle, should not accept any appointment:

(a) which is prohibited by law, or

(b) as a receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, or liquidator, or any appointment under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, except as an inspector, in respect of any debtor, where the member or firm is, or at any time during the two preceding years was:

(i) a director or officer of the debtor;
(ii) an employer or employee of the debtor or of a director or officer of the debtor;
(iii) related to the debtor or to any director or officer of the debtor; or
(iv) the auditor, accountant or legal counsel, or a partner or an employee of the auditor, accountant or legal counsel of the debtor.

For purposes of this Interpretation the term "accountant" means any member or firm who has performed a review engagement with respect to the financial statements of the debtor in accordance with the CICA Handbook - Assurance.

CI 204.8/4 Where a conflict of interest may exist, or may appear to exist, a member or a firm should make full disclosure to, and obtain the written consent of, all interested parties and, in keeping with this principle, should not accept any appointment:

(a) as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act where the member or firm has already accepted an appointment as receiver, receiver-manager, agent of a secured creditor, liquidator, trustee under a trust indenture issued by the bankrupt corporation or by any corporation related to the bankrupt corporation, or on behalf of any person related to the bankrupt without having first made disclosure of such prior appointment. The member or firm should inform the creditors of the bankrupt of the prior appointment as soon as reasonably possible;

(b) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor or on behalf of any person related to the bankrupt where the member or firm has already accepted an appointment as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act without first obtaining the permission of the inspectors of the bankrupt estate. Where inspectors have not been appointed at the time that the second appointment is to be taken, the member or firm should obtain the approval of the creditors of the bankrupt of having taken the second appointment as soon as reasonably possible; and if the second appointment is taken before obtaining the approval of the creditors, it should be taken subject to their approval;

(c) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any corporation where the member or firm is, or at any time during the two-year period commencing at the date of the last audit report or the last review engagement report was, the trustee (or related to such trustee) under a trust indenture issued by such corporation or by any corporation related to such corporation without first obtaining the permission of the creditors secured under such trust indenture. Upon the acceptance of any such appointment as trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act, the member or firm should inform the creditors of the bankrupt corporation of the prior appointment as (or relationship to) the trustee under a trust indenture issued by the bankrupt corporation or by any corporation related to the bankrupt corporation as soon as
as reasonably possible;  
(d) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, liquidator of an insolvent company under the Winding-Up and Restructuring Act, or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any corporation where the member or firm is related to an officer or director of such corporation; or  
(e) as receiver, receiver-manager, agent for a secured creditor, or trustee under the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act in respect of any person or corporation where the member or firm is a creditor, or an officer or director of any corporation that is a creditor, of such person or corporation unless the relationship is sufficiently remote that the member or firm can act having independence in fact and appearance.

CI 204.8/5 For purposes of paragraphs 3 and 4, persons are related to each other if they are defined as such under Section 4 of the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act.

CI 204.8/6 A member or firm engaged in insolvency practice should ensure there are no relationships with retired partners which may be seen to impair the member's or firm's independence. Refer to paragraph 29 of the interpretations in respect of Rules 204.1 to 204.7.

INDEPENDENCE - DISCLOSURE OF IMPAIRMENT OF INDEPENDENCE

Professional services, other than assurance or specified auditing procedures and insolvency engagements

CI 204.9/1 Members and firms who provide a professional service which does not require the member or firm to be independent are required by Rule 204.9 to disclose any influence, interest or relationship which, in respect of the professional service, would be seen by a reasonable observer to impair the member's or firm's independence. Members and firms should refer to Rules 204.1 to 204.8 and the related Council Interpretations when determining whether they must be independent and would appear to be independent with respect to particular engagements.

CI 204.9/2 Such disclosure is required whether or not any written report or other communication is provided and should indicate the nature of the influence or relationship and the nature and extent of the interest. Any written communication concerning or accompanying financial statements or financial or other information must include such disclosure.

CI 204.9/3 Independence is not required for compilation engagements. Where the provider of the compilation service may be seen to be lacking independence, the disclosure requirement of Rule 204.9 applies.

CI 204.9/4 For the purposes of Rule 204.9 the preparation of accounting records or journal entries in connection with a compilation engagement is not an activity that requires disclosure in the Notice to Reader unless such preparation involves complex transactions as contemplated by paragraph 143 of the Council Interpretations to Rule 204.1 to 204.7.

CI 204.9/5 Tax return services may require disclosure in respect of some of the information
Members and firms are cautioned that disclosure under Rule 204.9 does not relieve them from their obligation to comply with the rules of professional conduct and in particular Rules 201, 202, 205 and 206.

CI 204.9/6

Cl 204 A - AUDIT APPOINTMENTS UNDER THE NOVA SCOTIA ELECTIONS ACT

1. **Introduction:** The Nova Scotia Elections Act requires the filing of audited returns by the official agents of recognized parties and the official agents of candidates; each return is to be reported on by an auditor who is a public accountant licensed under the Public Accountants Act of Nova Scotia.

   Although the Act in Section 164K (6) makes reference to “an employee” being eligible as an auditor, under the provisions of The Public Accountants Act an employee is not eligible to obtain a public accountants license and therefore would not be eligible to be appointed auditor of a candidate or a recognized party.

2. **Ineligibility provisions - statutory:** Section 164K (5) of the Act lists a number of persons (hereinafter referred to as “ineligible persons”) who cannot act as auditor for a recognized party or candidate; these are:
   - a returning officer, deputy returning officer or election clerk;
   - a candidate;
   - an official agent of a candidate;
   - an official agent of recognized party.

3. Under the Public Accountants Act of Nova Scotia only individuals are licensed to practice public accounting and therefore firms may not be appointed as auditor or sign as auditor of candidates or parties.

4. **Council extension of ineligibility provisions:** Without wishing to extend the statutory prohibitions unduly, the Council considers that there are additional relationships to those spelled out in the Act which could impair, or appear to impair, an auditor’s objectivity. This Interpretation, therefore, sets out the Council’s views on unacceptable relationships, in respect of audits under the Act encompassing both those prohibited by the statute and those unacceptable professionally.

5. The Council recognizes that too detailed a proscription, coupled with the widespread involvement of members as citizens, in the political process, could make it almost impossible for the audit provisions of the Act to be given practical effect. Accordingly, this Interpretation seeks to cover only the more obvious relationships which the profession would consider unacceptable. Too narrow an Interpretation could, in view of the many conceivable conflicts of interest, make it almost impossible for members to serve the community’s needs.

6. **Definitions:** As used in this Interpretation “candidate”, “recognized party”, “official agent”, “during an election” have the meaning given to them in Section 2 of the Act.

   “immediate family” has the meaning given to it under Definitions, Section 505.
7. **Audit of a candidate:** The Council believes that a member would not be complying with the Objectivity Rule 204 if he were to act as auditor of a candidate if he is:

(i)  
- a returning officer, deputy returning officer, election clerk, candidate, official agent of a candidate or an official agent of a recognized party;
- a paid worker during an election for any candidate or any recognized party;
- a volunteer worker during an election for that candidate or the recognized party of that candidate where:
  (a) he exercises any function of leadership or direction in that candidate’s or that party’s campaign organization, or
  (b) he carries on any significant function involving the raising, spending or custody of that candidate’s or that party’s campaign funds; or if
(ii) a member of his immediate family, or his partner in a public accountancy practice is:
- a returning officer, deputy returning officer or election clerk in the electoral district of that candidate or is the candidate, official agent of that candidate or an official agent of that candidate’s recognized party;
- a paid worker during an election of that candidate or that candidate’s recognized party;
- a volunteer worker as described in (i) above, during an election, for that candidate or the recognized party of that candidate.

8. **Audit of a recognized party:** In addition to the statutory prohibitions set out in Section 164K (5) of the Act, which are referred to in paragraph 2, the Council believes that a member would not be complying with the Objectivity Rule 204 if he were to act as auditor of a recognized party if he, or a member of his immediate family, or his partner in a public accountancy practice is a paid worker, or volunteer worker who exercises any function of leadership or direction in that party’s organization or carries on any significant function involving the raising, spending or custody of that party’s funds.

9. **Conclusion:** Generally, members contemplating acting as auditors for recognized parties or candidates must be alert to any circumstances not described in this Interpretation, which may place them in the position of impairment of objectivity or where a strong appearance of impairment might be presented. This type of question tends to arise, for example, where a donation of cash or of professional services is made. Members of the Institute, as citizens, have the same responsibility to be involved in the political process as other citizens; such involvement may include financial support of a registered party or candidate by a member, his immediate family or his partner in a public accountancy practice. The Council believes that the making of a financial contribution or the donation of professional services does not, of itself, necessarily create an impairment of objectivity, in these particular circumstances. Members should recognize, however, the need to apply judgment to the question of the amount of any such contribution and must be satisfied that any such contribution does not in fact impair their audit objectivity or strongly appear to impair it.

**Introduction**

1. The *Canada Elections Act* ("the Act") requires the filing of audited returns by the chief agents of registered parties, (the official agents of candidates () and, in some cases, the financial agents of registered associations, leadership contestants and nomination contestants. Each return is to be reported on by an auditor who is a member in good standing of a corporation, an association or an institute of professional accountants and includes a partnership, every partner of which is such a member.
Ineligibility Provision - Statutory

2. The Act lists a number of persons (hereinafter referred to as “ineligible persons”) who cannot act as auditors for a registered party, candidate, registered association, leadership contestant or nomination contestant. These are:
   (a) an election officer or a member of the staff of a returning officer;
   (b) a candidate;
   (c) an official agent of a candidate;
   (d) a chief agent of a registered party or an eligible party;
   (e) a registered agent of a registered party;
   (f) electoral district agents of registered associations
   (g) leadership contestants and their leadership campaign agents;
   (h) nomination contestants and their financial agents; and
   (i) financial agents of registered third parties.

3. The Act prohibits an ineligible person from participating in the audit examination of the records or in the preparation of the audit report of a candidate, a leadership contestant or a nomination contestant (except to respond to the auditor’s request for information). There is no similar restriction placed on the auditor of a registered party or a registered association. An eligible person may be appointed as auditor for a candidate notwithstanding that the person is a member of a partnership that has been appointed as an auditor for a registered party or for a candidate in another electoral district.

Council Extension of Ineligibility Provisions

4. Without wishing to extend the statutory prohibitions unduly, Council considers that there are additional interests or relationships to those spelled out in the Act, which could impair, or appear to impair, an auditor’s objectivity. This interpretation, therefore, sets out Council’s view on unacceptable interests or relationships, in respect of audits under the Act, encompassing both those prohibited by the statute and those unacceptable professionally.

5. Council recognizes that too detailed a proscription, coupled with the widespread involvement of members, as citizens, in the political process, could make it almost impossible for the audit provisions of the Act to be given practical effect. Accordingly, this interpretation seeks to cover only the more obvious interests and relationships which might be considered unacceptable. Too narrow an interpretation could, in view of the many conceivable conflicts of interest, make it almost impossible for members to and firms serve the community’s needs.

Definitions

6. “Candidate”, “registered agent”, “registered party”, “official agent”, “registered association”, “leadership contestant”, “nomination contestant”, and “election period” have the meaning given to them in subsection 2(1) of the Act.

Audit of a Candidate

7. Council believes that a member may not be complying with Rule 204.1 if the member were to act as auditor of a candidate as well as being:
   (a) a paid worker during an election period for any candidate or any registered party;
   (b) a volunteer worker during an election period for that candidate or the registered party of that candidate where
      i) the member exercises any function of leadership or direction in that candidate’s or that party’s campaign organization, or
      ii) the member carried on any significant function involving the raising, spending or custody of that candidate’s or that party’s campaign funds;
   or if an immediate family member, or a partner is:
(c) a returning officer, deputy returning officer, assistant returning officer or election clerk in the electoral district of that candidate or is the candidate, official agent of that candidate or a registered agent of that candidate’s registered party;
(d) a paid worker during an election period for that candidate or that candidate’s registered party;
(e) a volunteer worker as described in (b) (i) above, during an election period, for that candidate or the registered party of that candidate.

Council believes that where a member is an “ineligible person” in respect of a particular candidate, the firm of which that member is a partner may not act as auditor of that candidate.

As noted in paragraph 3, the ineligible persons described in the Act may not participate in the audit examination of any candidate’s return. Council believes that, as an extension of this, a member who could not act as auditor for a candidate because of any of the relationships detailed in paragraphs 7(a) and (b) above, should not participate in the audit examination of a candidate’s return.

**Audit of a Registered Party, Registered Association, Leadership Contestant or Nomination Contestant**

8. In addition to the statutory prohibitions set out in the Act, the Council believes that a member may not be complying with Rule 204.1 if the member were to act as auditor of a registered party, registered association, leadership contestant or nomination contestant and the member, or an immediate family member, or a partner is a paid worker or volunteer worker who exercises any function of leadership or direction or carried on any significant function involving the raising, spending or custody of that funds belonging to the party, association or contestant, as the case may be.

**Conclusion**

9. Generally, members contemplating acting as auditors for registered parties, candidates, associations or contestants should be alert to any circumstances, not described in this Interpretation, which may place them in the position of impairment of objectivity or where an appearance of impairment might be presented. This type of question tends to arise, for example, where a donation of cash or of professional services is made. Members, as citizens, have the same responsibility to be involved in the political process as other citizens; such involvement may include financial support of a registered party, candidate association or contestant by a member, the member’s immediate family or the member’s partner. Council believes that the making of a financial contribution or the donation of professional services does not, of itself, necessarily create an impairment of objectivity, in these particular circumstances.

Members should recognize, however, the need to apply judgment to the question of the amount of any such contribution and must be satisfied that any such contribution does not in fact impair their audit objectivity or appear to impair it.

Council considers it of paramount importance that a member or a firm accepting an appointment under the Act makes such acceptance known to all partners so as to avoid any conflict arising within the provisions of the Act concerning ineligible persons.

**FALSE OR MISLEADING DOCUMENTS AND ORAL REPRESENTATIONS**

**CI 205/1** A member who is not in public practice is subject to Rule 205 just as is the member in public practice. It is recognized that this may place such a member in a difficult position vis-a-vis the organization employing the member or entities engaging the member’s
services. However, professional duty prohibits a member from being associated with financial statements or other information, whether written or oral, which the member knows, or should know, to be false or misleading.

CI 205/2 When a member finds it necessary to become disassociated from false or misleading information, it would be prudent for the member to consider obtaining legal advice.

COMPLIANCE WITH PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS

CI 206/1 Generally accepted accounting principles
The term “generally accepted accounting principles” has the meaning contained in the CICA Handbook. Some entities will prepare financial statements in accordance with other bases of accounting, including, for example, accounting principles generally accepted in another jurisdiction or accounting principles applicable to public sector bodies. In cases such as these, the term "generally accepted accounting principles" refers to the accounting principles that are required in the particular circumstances.

CI 206/2 Compliance with Rule 206 necessarily involves the exercise of professional judgment in determining whether financial statements are presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. In this regard, the member should refer to the CICA Handbook – Accounting, and should ensure that the principles are applied in consideration of the spirit and intent of applicable accounting standards and other primary sources of generally accepted accounting principles.

CI 206/3 Where no primary source of generally accepted accounting principles exists, the member should conduct such research and consult such authoritative sources and experts as are necessary in the circumstances to ensure that the presentation is consistent with the relevant conceptual framework of the CICA Handbook – Accounting generally accepted accounting principles. When exercising professional judgment in such situations, members are reminded that no practice should be adopted solely on the basis of its use generally or within a particular industry. Further, extreme interpretations of a source do not constitute evidence that a practice is consistent with the conceptual framework or primary sources of generally accepted accounting principles. Members should consider whether it is likely that most parties, exercising professional judgment, would reject such a practice because it does not result in a fair presentation of the financial position, results of operations or cash flows of the entity.

CI 206/4 A member should document the results of research undertaken and any other considerations influencing the member’s choice or acceptance of accounting policies and interpretation of generally accepted accounting principles.

Practice of Public Accounting

CI 206/5 Rule 206.1 requires a member engaged in the practice of public accounting to perform professional services in accordance with generally accepted standards of practice of the profession. Generally accepted standards of practice of the profession include, but are not limited to the following:

- the standards and guidance contained in the CICA Handbook;
- the governing legislation, bylaws, regulations and rules of professional conduct of the provincial institute(s) to which the member or firm belongs; and
- requirements of relevant federal and provincial statutes.
CI 206/6 Members engaged in the practice of public accounting should foster an environment within their firms that encourages the discussion and understanding of the application of accounting principles and other standards of practice of the profession and provides for a process to deal with professional dissent. Members should encourage others within the firm who disagree with the application of those principles and standards in a particular situation to communicate that disagreement to an individual in the firm designated for that purpose.

CI 206/7 A member who is responsible for issuing an assurance report on an entity’s financial statements and who believes that the financial statements prepared by the entity’s management are not presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles should refer to the guidance contained in the CICA Handbook - Assurance and
- take those steps that are necessary to ensure that the financial statements are presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles; or
- issue a report with an appropriate reservation, as required by the CICA Handbook - Assurance; or
- seek permission to resign from the engagement.

CI 206/8 A member who participates in an engagement to provide assurance on the financial statements of an entity and who believes the financial statements of the entity are not presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles should communicate that belief to the person responsible for the assurance engagement. If, after consultation, the member continues to believe that the financial statements have not been presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, the member should communicate that belief to one of the firm’s senior partners. Where possible, the communication should be dated and issued prior to the issuance of the financial statements and should be retained by the member for a reasonable period of time.

CI 206/9 Before communicating with one of the firm’s senior partners, the member referred to in Paragraph 8, should consider:
- whether the concern results in a material misstatement of the financial statements;
- whether the member possesses sufficient expertise and knowledge of the circumstances; and
- whether the member should first discuss the matter with another person in the firm.

Preparation of Financial Statements

CI 206/10 It is management’s responsibility to ensure that an entity’s general-purpose financial statements are presented fairly in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A member who has the final responsibility for determining management’s application of accounting principles in the entity’s general purpose financial statements must take effective steps to ensure that the entity follows generally accepted accounting principles. In doing so, the member may obtain advice and counsel from others.

CI 206/11 Rule 206.2 applies to those members who have responsibility for or oversight of the application of accounting principles in the preparation of an entity’s general-purpose financial statements. In some cases, a member’s responsibility or oversight may be limited to a component of the financial statements, in which case Rule 206.2 applies to that member in respect of the accounting principles applicable to that component of the financial statements as well as to the member who has final responsibility for determining management’s application of accounting principles to the general-purpose financial
statements of a entity, taken as a whole. The member who has the final responsibility for
determining management's application of accounting principles to the general-purpose
financial statements of an entity is responsible for the application of accounting principles
in respect of each component of the financial statements and cannot claim undue
reliance on the opinion of the member having responsibility for or oversight of a particular
component of the financial statements.

CI 206/12  A member who has participated in management's application of generally accepted
accounting principles to all or a portion of the financial statements and who believes the
general-purpose financial statements of the entity have not been presented fairly in
accordance with generally accepted accounting principles should communicate that belief
to the person who has final responsibility for determining management's application of
accounting principles. If, after consultation, the member continues to believe the
presentation is not appropriate, the member should communicate that belief to the
entity’s audit committee or, where there is no audit committee, the board of directors.
Where possible, the communication should be dated and issued prior to the approval of
the general-purpose financial statements by the audit committee or the board, as the
case may be.

The member should also communicate that belief to the person responsible for providing
assurance on the financial statements. Before communicating with the entity’s assurance
provider, the member should consider obtaining legal advice.

CI 206/13  Before communicating with the audit committee, board of directors or the entity's
assurance provider, the member referred to in Paragraph 11 should consider matters
including:
(a) whether the concern results in a material misstatement of the financial
statements;
(b) whether the member possesses sufficient expertise or knowledge of the
circumstances; and
(c) whether the member should first discuss the matter with a more senior employee
of the entity.

CI 206/14  A member may prepare or approve financial statements that are not, and are not
intended to be, presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.
Rule 206.2 does not apply when a member prepares or approves financial statements,
which are
(i) prepared solely for internal use within the entity; or
(ii) prepared for specified users under the terms and according to the accounting
principles agreed to by the preparer and the specified users.
Such financial statements are not general-purpose financial statements.

Service on audit committees and boards of directors

CI 206/15  A member who sits on an entity’s audit committee or board of directors is expected to use
the professional skills and knowledge that a competent Chartered Accountant would
possess in fulfilling the member’s responsibilities on such committee or board.
Competency in the Chartered Accountancy profession is not static and cannot be defined
without regard to time and context. Whether a member is competent is necessarily a
question of fact at a point in time. Competency does not require a member who sits on
an audit committee or board of directors to be an expert in financial accounting and
reporting matters; nor does it require the member to act as a professional advisor to the
audit committee or board. However, it does require the member to identify and raise the
issues that should be discussed by the audit committee or board of directors, as noted
below.
A member who sits on an audit committee or board of directors should encourage the audit committee or board of directors to have substantive discussions with management and with the entity’s assurance provider. The CICA Handbook provides useful guidance on the role that members of the audit committee or board members can play in the oversight of an entity’s financial reporting process.

Matters that members who sit on an audit committee or board of directors should discuss with management and the assurance provider are the issues that a competent Chartered Accountant would raise, which include, but are not limited to:

(a) the issues involved, and related judgments made by management, in selecting accounting policies and formulating significant accounting estimates and disclosures;

(b) any disagreement within management or between management and the assurance provider with respect to the application of generally accepted accounting principles and the resolution thereof;

(c) the assurance provider’s conclusions regarding the reasonableness of the estimates made by management and the bases therefor; and

(d) the independence of the assurance provider.

In addition to the above, a member who sits on an entity’s audit committee or board of directors should take reasonable steps to ensure the audit committee or board of directors discusses with management the overall performance of the assurance provider.

Members who are directors of entities should be familiar with the applicable requirements of regulatory bodies and other authoritative pronouncements on corporate governance matters.

All members

CI 206/16 Members are also reminded of the their obligations under the rules:

(a) to bring to the attention of the Institute any information concerning an apparent breach of the rules of professional conduct or any information raising doubt as to the competence, reputation or integrity of another member (Rule 211.1); and

(b) not to sign or associate with any financial statement that the member knows, or should know, is false or misleading (Rule 205).

Glossary

For the purposes of these interpretations of Rules 207 to 210 inclusive,

(a) **Above the Wall**

“Above the wall” is a term used to describe one or more partners or other senior members of a firm who have access to information about engagements undertaken by the firm and can therefore see both sides of a conflict. These individuals need to be particularly careful to avoid any improper use or dissemination of confidential client information to parties on either side of the wall. Partners or other members of the firm who are “above the wall” will be precluded from participating in those engagements about which they have information received in their positions above the wall.

(b) **Fire Wall**

A “Fire Wall” (sometimes referred to as a “Chinese Wall” or “Ethics Wall”) is a conflict management technique maintained in a firm to restrict the flow of confidential information within the firm only to those who require it in order to fulfill the terms of an engagement. A Fire Wall is intended to ensure that confidential information is not improperly communicated, inadvertently or otherwise, to others within the firm.
(c) **Cone of Silence**

A “Cone of Silence” is an arrangement achieved by means of an undertaking by an affected person not to disclose confidential information relating to a specific client or engagement. In some circumstances, a Cone of Silence is achieved implicitly by special conduct of the person. In such circumstances, there should be observable evidence that the Cone of Silence is effective. Cones of Silence may be used to demonstrate foresight of the need to maintain the confidentiality of client information and thereby assist a firm to manage conflicts arising in various areas of its practice.

(d) **Confidential Client Information**

“Confidential client information” refers to information concerning the business and affairs of a client, acquired in the course of a professional relationship with the client. Such information is confidential to the client regardless of the nature or source of the information or the fact that others may share the knowledge. Such information remains confidential until the client expressly or impliedly authorizes it to be divulged.

In the case of an employee-employer relationship, the member or student has legal obligations to the employer that include a duty of confidentiality. The rule imposes a duty of confidentiality as a professional obligation, which is in addition to the member’s or student’s legal obligation to the employer.

(e) **Conflict of Interest**

A "conflict of interest" arises from an interest, restriction or relationship that, in respect of an engagement, would be seen by a reasonable observer to influence a member’s judgment or objectivity in the conduct of the engagement.

(f) **Institutional Mechanisms**

“Institutional mechanisms” are reasonable measures that are formally undertaken by a firm to manage conflicts and to restrict the flow of confidential client information from one person in a firm to another. Such measures may include internal training, internal barriers such as Fire Walls, Cones of Silence, restricted access to files, physical separation of personnel or departments and formal firm policies and procedures.

(g) **Informed Consent**

“Informed consent” refers to a client’s agreement, usually to proceed with an engagement, having been provided with sufficient information concerning the existence of a conflict, its nature and its potential consequences, to make a knowledgeable decision.

(h) **Need to Know Basis**

The “need to know basis” refers to a policy of restricting the flow of confidential client information inside a firm to those members who require the information to pursue the client’s interest.

(i) **Rebuttable Presumption**

A “rebuttable presumption” is a presumption that will be deemed to be valid or true until adequate evidence to the contrary is produced. A presumption is rebutted when the actual facts are found to be different than the presumption assumes.

**UNAUTHORIZED BENEFITS**

CI 207/1 Refer also to Rule 216 and CI 216, Payment or Receipt of Commissions.

**CONFIDENTIALITY OF INFORMATION**

CI 208.1/1 The duty to keep a client’s affairs confidential should not be confused with the legal
concept of privilege. The duty of confidentiality precludes the member from disclosing a client’s affairs without the knowledge and consent of the client. The duty of confidentiality to clients and former clients does not expire with time. As confidential information becomes dated, the duty may be of less practical concern to a client, but the duty continues.

CI 208.1/2 The duty of confidentiality does not excuse a member from complying with a legal requirement to disclose the information. However, the courts have held that a member faced with a subpoena or other request to disclose information should be aware of the member’s obligation to bring to the attention of the court or other authority the member’s duty of confidentiality to the client. If a member is in doubt as to the legitimacy or scope of a claim for disclosure, legal advice should be sought. Ultimately, in a dispute, a court will determine, based on the facts, whether a member should maintain the confidentiality of client information.

CI 208.1/3 A member or student will not be in contravention of any rule governing confidentiality by reason of obtaining legal advice with respect to his or her duty of confidentiality.

CI 208.1/4 One of the underlying issues when dealing with conflicts of interest is controlling the degree to which persons in a firm share client confidences. (See also Rule 210.) Rule 208 prohibits a member’s or a student’s improper use of confidential client information, but does not restrain its disclosure within a firm. Members may find they are in a position of conflict due to the general legal presumption that the knowledge of one person in a firm is shared with or attributed to others in the firm. The legal presumption that knowledge is shared within a firm may be rebutted if the firm can demonstrate that effective institutional mechanisms are in place to limit the sharing of confidential information within the firm.

This basis of sharing information within a firm recognizes that different persons in a firm have different needs for information in order to properly fulfill their responsibilities. For example:

(a) An assurance provider must have information on all aspects of a client’s affairs that might affect the assurance provider’s opinion on the financial statements.

(b) A tax practitioner, in the course of preparing or reviewing an income tax return, must have information on all aspects of a client’s affairs that might affect the income tax return.

(c) A forensic accountant undertaking an investigation of a client’s affairs might only require information relating to the subject of the inquiry.

(d) A member who is providing a professional opinion on a matter may wish to seek the advice of another member of the firm.

CI 208.1/5 Where appropriate, members and firms should also inform clients and potential clients that the use of institutional mechanisms, which safeguard their confidential information, necessarily means that a member serving a particular client may not be aware of information that is confidential to another client, which would assist the member’s client and advance that client’s interest.

BORROWING FROM CLIENTS

CI 209/1 It is a fundamental principle of the profession that members, students and firms provide advice to their clients that is free of prejudice, conflict of interest or undue influence that may impair sound professional judgment. When a member, student or firm borrows money from a client, there is an inherent conflict between the interests of the member,
student or firm and those of the client. Accordingly, members, students and firms that enter into the types of financing or borrowing arrangements that are allowed under Rule 209.1 or 209.2 are cautioned that they must comply with all of the other Rules of Professional Conduct including, but not limited to:

(i) 201 – Maintenance of reputation of profession;
(ii) 202 – Integrity and due care and objectivity;
(iii) 204 – Independence;
(iv) 208 – Confidentiality of information; and
(v) 210 – Conflict of interest

CI 209/2 When a member or student borrows money from or has a loan guaranteed by a client who is a family member or an entity over which a family member exercises significant influence, the member or student should consider setting out the terms and conditions of the loan or guarantee in writing. Before the loan or guarantee is made, the member or student should also consider advising the client to obtain independent advice with respect to the matter. Similar considerations should apply when a firm borrows money from or has a loan guaranteed by a family member of a partner or shareholder of the firm or an entity over which a family member of a partner or shareholder of the firm exercises significant influence.

CI 209/3 For purposes of Rule 209.1(b), a family member means any of the following persons

(a) a spouse (or equivalent); or
(b) a parent, child, sibling, grandparent, grandchild, aunt, uncle, niece, nephew or first cousin who is related to the member or the member's spouse (or equivalent) by blood, marriage or adoption.

CI 209/4 Rule 209.1 applies only to new borrowings or guarantees or amendments to the terms of existing borrowings or guarantees that occur after the lender becomes a client. When an existing lender or guarantor becomes a client, the member, student or firm should be mindful of the need to provide services with due care and an objective state of mind and, accordingly, should consider whether the loan should be repaid or the guarantee released.

CONFLICT OF INTEREST

CI 210/1 Identifying Conflicts
Rules 210.1 and 210.2 together require members to determine whether there exist conflicts as between themselves and their clients or proposed clients, or between the duties and obligations owed to one client and the duties and obligations owed to another client or a proposed client. Where such a conflict is found to exist, the member must decline to act in the proposed affected engagement, or withdraw from the engagement, unless the consent of the client or proposed client to proceed or continue the engagement is implied by the client's or proposed client's conduct or the conflict can be managed as provided in Rule 210.3(a).
Conflicts in a member's firm or practice generally arise in three broad types of circumstance described as follows.

Public Practice Objectivity Issues
As provided in Rule 204 and the related Council Interpretation, the provision of assurance and insolvency services must be objective, both in fact and appearance. In considering conflicts of interest with respect to a professional engagement, members and firms should refer to Rule 204 and the related Council Interpretation for more complete guidance in determining objectivity.
Protecting Confidentiality of Client Information
As provided in Rule 208 and the related Council Interpretation, members and students must protect the confidentiality of client information and assure clients that this information will not be disclosed. The only exceptions to this obligation are set out in the Rule itself.

Pursuit of Clients’ Interests
Members and students have an obligation to all of their clients to provide professional service with integrity and due care. Since members and their firms will have a number of clients, they may encounter conflicting client interests when fulfilling their obligations to each client. While a member or firm may be able to provide services to clients whose interests conflict, they must consider the extent of their obligations to each client and then use professional judgment to determine whether any particular conflict must be avoided, or whether explicit consent must be obtained or the situation reflects common commercial practice where the consent of the client to act is implied by the client’s conduct. Where there is explicit or implied consent, the member or firm must also consider whether the conflict can be managed appropriately.

Cl 210/2
Common Commercial Practice
The following situations involve implied consent and reflect common commercial practice: “The firm is acting as auditor for several clients who happen to compete in the same industry. They have hired us for our experience with their industry, and respect our reputation for protecting confidential information.”
It is reasonable for members to conclude that clients with knowledge of the circumstances who do not object to a conflict at the outset of an engagement have accepted the conflict.
“I am doing an audit for Company XYZ and they have asked me to do some consulting as well. As an assurance provider, my duty is to report to the shareholders. As a consultant engaged by management, my duty is to the corporation.”
Members must be aware of the implications to their objectivity and independence when providing consulting services to an assurance client.

Cl 210/3
Other Conflicts
Appropriate Management of Conflicts
There will be instances where a conflict will arise that can be appropriately managed provided the circumstances are clear to all parties and there is explicit consent on the part of all parties to proceed.

The following conflict situations may or may not be acceptable to the public:

“I would like to call upon an expert within my firm to assist on a particular matter for one of my clients. This expert is already committed to another client.”

Whether this situation creates a conflict depends on many factors, including the number of experts in the firm.

“The firm has two separate clients who have asked it to take on a merger and acquisition assignment—however, each client is focused on acquiring the same target company.”

Whether this situation creates a conflict depends on the ability to use distinct teams on each engagement and the effectiveness of procedures put in place to safeguard confidential client information.

There is a rebuttable presumption that the following conflict situations are unacceptable and, if the presumption is not rebutted, must be avoided:
“The firm has been asked by the husband and 50% shareholder of the firm’s client, Company X, for assistance in purchasing the shares of the other 50% shareholder (his wife) in settling the distribution of assets in a divorce settlement.”

“The firm has been asked to complete a merger and acquisition assignment for my client but the takeover target is already a client (or former client) of the firm.”

“The firm is conducting a job search engagement for a client. I have found an excellent candidate to fill the position—only this candidate is currently employed by one of our firm’s clients.”

“I have been asked to pursue a strategic marketing study for one of my clients—however, the firm is already undertaking a similar marketing study for another client in the same market.”

Whether this final example is a conflict that can be managed will depend on the ability of the firm to use appropriate institutional mechanisms on the two engagements.

Conflicts Encountered by Professional Service Area

Institute members who are also members of another professional body must also adhere to that other body’s code of conduct. Other professional bodies would include, among others, the Canadian Association of Insolvency and Restructuring Professionals, the Canadian Institute of Business Valuators and the Canadian Institute of Actuaries. Where the Institute’s rules differ from those of the other professional body, the higher of the two standards will apply.

It is possible that the nature of an engagement may change during the course of the engagement. This is particularly true when a member is asked to conduct an engagement in a situation that is potentially adversarial, even though the parties who engage the member may be in accord initially. Therefore, members must consider the possible existence and management of conflicts throughout the course of the engagement.

The following is a discussion of conflicts of interest commonly encountered by members and their firms in the significant areas of professional practice.

Assurance Services

(a) A member or firm may be asked to provide assurance services for two or more clients who have competing commercial interests. There will either be implied consent on the part of all clients for the member or firm to act or the assurance provider will deal with the conflict by obtaining the informed consent of each client. In either case, the member should use procedures to protect confidential client information.

(b) A member may possess confidential information obtained from one assurance client that is important to the fulfillment of the assurance engagement of a second client. For example, a member may learn during the course of an assurance engagement that the assurance client is in serious financial difficulty. If the member also undertakes an assurance engagement for a major supplier of the assurance client, the member will possess confidential information that could result in a material change to the financial statements of the supplier-client. The member may not rely on this confidential information to complete the engagement for the supplier-client. If the supplier-client is unaware of the information relating to the first client, the member has a conflict of interest that must be resolved.

In such circumstances, the member is expected to use reasonable efforts to obtain the confidential information from other sources, and if this is not possible,
the member should seek legal advice.

(c) A member may possess confidential client information gained in the course of an assurance engagement that would be useful in the provision of other professional services by the firm. Such confidential client information obtained in the course of the assurance engagement must be protected from disclosure or use for other purposes unless prior permission is obtained from the client.

(d) An assurance provider has the right to obtain the information that is required in order to carry out the assurance engagement. For this reason, the assurance provider is expected to have all knowledge concerning the client that the firm possesses that is relevant to the assurance engagement. Clients are expected to give assurance partners the information directly but may authorize assurance partners to seek out the information from others within the firm. Information protected by legal privilege would be dealt with by following the protocol for enquiries established by the lawyers involved.

(e) A member or firm engaged to provide an assurance report to the shareholders on a set of financial statements might be asked by one shareholder for confidential client information from the audit working papers to be used by that shareholder in a dispute with another shareholder. Since the assurance provider's duty is to the shareholders as a group and not to individual shareholders, such a request would present a conflict.

(f) Members and firms should refer to Rule 204 and the related Council Interpretation for guidance on conflicts that may affect independence and objectivity with respect to an assurance engagement.

Taxation Services

(a) A tax practitioner is likely to be involved in providing tax assistance and advice to a wide variety of clients who are entitled to expect their affairs to be kept confidential. The tax practitioner is expected to provide each client with the benefit of all of his or her professional knowledge unless the practitioner and the client agree, preferably in writing, that particular knowledge that the practitioner possesses may not be disclosed to third parties because it is proprietary to the client. Other clients should be made aware that this restriction might exist from time to time.

(b) A member or firm may be asked to provide tax-planning advice to two clients who will use that advice to pursue an objective that only one of them can achieve. Since both of the clients are in pursuit of the same objective, there is an initial presumption that the firm can accept only the first request to act in the matter. It may, however, be possible for different persons within the firm to act for each client through the use of effective institutional mechanisms, thus rebutting the initial presumption that the firm cannot serve both clients.

(c) A tax practitioner may obtain only the information that relates to his or her specific engagement. In such a case, it is reasonable to believe that the tax practitioner will not possess all of the firm’s knowledge of a particular client and it may be possible to satisfy the onus of demonstrating that the firm’s knowledge is not automatically shared by the particular tax practitioner.
Management Consulting Services

A management consultant may be involved in a variety of engagements such that there are conflicts which may be acceptable in one type of engagement but which are unacceptable in another. Since consulting engagements usually have clearly stated objectives and a defined life span, the issue of possible conflicts of interest is often dealt with in the terms of the engagement (i.e., the extent of the member’s obligations are agreed to by contract).

Consulting engagements may be generally regarded in three categories for the purpose of considering the issue of conflict of interest, as follows:

(a) Process and design consulting engagements, which generally involve the provision of specialized knowledge to assist a client to achieve an objective that the client has chosen. It is usual for a consultant to provide such assistance to a wide range of clients, some of whom may have competing interests. Often, the consultant is selected for specialized expertise. The clients recognize that, in the future, the consultant is likely to make that expertise available to others, having built on experience gained along the way.

(b) Strategic consulting often involves a consultant assisting a client in the selection of optimum business strategies. Strategic consulting is likely to involve the most highly sensitive and confidential business information. Consultants providing these types of services typically recognize this sensitivity and do not work for clients who are in direct competition. It is, however, recognized that the business strategies selected often become publicly known within a short time frame and it is therefore possible that, after a suitable time, a consultant may undertake work for a direct competitor of a previous client. Such matters should be expressly addressed in the engagement contract.

(c) Search consulting involves assisting a client to locate information or resources that are necessary for the client to attain an objective. Since the information or resource is likely to exist within another commercial enterprise, the opportunity for a conflict of interest to arise is particularly great. For this reason, it is customary for the consultant to disclose at the outset the nature and extent of any limitations on the scope of the search.

Merger/Acquisition Services

(a) A practitioner involved in merger and acquisition activity is likely to be involved in a number of such engagements concurrently working for both existing and new clients. Where the practitioner is a member of a firm there may be several types of specialized support which the firm will offer in this area of activity ranging through due diligence, tax planning, market analysis and pricing of the proposed transaction.

A member involved in mergers and acquisitions is expected to use a variety of conflict management tools to provide the greatest possible assurance that confidentiality of the work will be maintained unless otherwise agreed with the client. A firm will be expected to regularly employ Fire Walls and to impose Cones of Silence on those who are consulted in the work. Where consultations beyond the firm are required, the use of confidentiality agreements will be necessary.

(b) Due to the nature of the work of a merger and acquisition practitioner, it is recognized that the pursuit of an engagement for one client may run contrary to the interest of another client of the firm.
When a firm uses institutional mechanisms such as Fire Walls, it should be recognized that if their use is challenged in a court of law, the firm will be required to demonstrate that the institutional mechanisms are effective. Even then, when one or more of the firm’s merger and acquisition practitioners are working for clients pursuing approximately the same objective within approximately the same time frame, the firm, with the permission of each client, is expected to obtain the informed consent of all such clients, ordinarily in writing. While able to provide advice, unless agreed otherwise by all clients, the firm should exclude itself from the client’s decision-making role.

Forensic Accounting & Litigation Support Services

(a) A forensic practitioner may engage in a number of different types of activity that will involve different expectations from a client. The most common different circumstances are finder of fact (including fraud investigations, breach of law investigations), quantification of losses and expert accounting and auditing testimony (including where a firm employs other experts such as actuaries, engineers, and economists).

In almost all circumstances, there is the real possibility that an engagement will become part of a dispute. There is, therefore, the expectation that the member will respect the firm’s obligations to its clients by not acting against them. This expectation may be modified in circumstances where the client engaged the firm for a narrow and unrelated purpose (such as a productivity improvement consulting assignment or an employee search assignment), but the member will only be able to rebut the presumption if it is clear the information received from the client is not relevant to the matter in dispute.

In the case of current clients, the firm may proceed with the engagement with the informed consent of both parties. The use of tools such as informed consent, Cones of Silence and Fire Walls will assist the firm to demonstrate that confidential information will be protected.

(b) It would ordinarily be appropriate for a member or firm to act as a finder of fact for parties on the opposing sides of a conflict where both parties agree to use the fact finding report as an agreed statement of fact within the legal process.

Valuation Services

(a) A valuation practitioner may or may not be a chartered business valuator (CBV). Valuation practitioners recognize the need to avoid conflicts of interest by not acting for two or more clients whose interests may conflict, except after adequate disclosure to and with the express written consent of all parties.

(b) Valuation practitioners must take care not to create a conflict of interest by accepting an engagement that will put them in a position of advocacy against another client or former client when the practitioner has confidential information of that former client. For example, a valuation practitioner should not accept an engagement from one shareholder group of a company that is being broken up (butterfly transaction) where the member has previously provided services to all shareholders of the company. Similar considerations also exist where the clients are a married couple who are divorcing.

Actuarial Services

A member who provides actuarial services may be a member of the Canadian Institute of Actuaries. Conflicts of interest should be less likely in actuarial assignments. However, when actuaries become involved in areas such as merger and acquisitions where conflicts frequently do arise, they are expected to conduct themselves as other members...
working in those areas.

Insolvency Services

A member who provides insolvency and corporate recovery services may be a licensed trustee and a member of the Canadian Insolvency Practitioners Association. Since much of this work is carried out under the auspices of the court, there is a special set of rules to deal with potential conflicts in the various roles that a member may serve. Although these rules prevent members from serving roles for different classes of creditor, they do permit the grouping of creditors of a single class into one pool, even though some of these creditors may have conflicting interests.

The Process for Dealing with Conflicts of Interest

Step 1: Identify Conflicts or Potential Conflicts

In order to identify conflicts or potential conflicts when accepting a new engagement, a member should seek information from others within the firm as to the interests of other clients and their affiliations. While many conflicts are obvious from the beginning, other conflicts may arise during the course of an engagement. Often, identifying conflicts is more difficult than dealing with conflicts.

There are three types of conflict, which may overlap, described as follows.

Professional Conflicts

Members, students and others within their firms are required by the profession to observe the rules of professional conduct. In order to preserve the highest possible standards for the CA profession, each member is expected to engage only in activities that will maintain the good reputation of the profession and its ability to serve the public interest. When this obligation runs contrary to a client’s interest, a professional conflict exists.

Legal Conflicts

Legal conflicts of interest arise primarily out of a member’s client obligations or specific contractual agreements. A member and his or her firm have a duty within the standards of the profession to pursue the client’s interests and to protect confidential client information. Thus, when two clients have conflicting interests, the firm cannot fulfill a duty to both unless appropriate institutional mechanisms are in place.

In addition, when a member is acting within the framework of litigation or potential litigation, the courts will want to ensure that the legal process is not compromised by participants, who act as experts, being influenced by interests or relationships which impair or might impair their objectivity.

Business Conflicts

Business conflicts occur when the business interest of a client is contrary to the business interest of the member or his or her firm or the business interest of another client of the member or firm. A business conflict raises management, not professional, issues for the member and his or her firm and can be resolved without reference to the rules of professional conduct, unless it also involves a professional or legal conflict. Business conflicts include the following examples:

(a) a particular engagement may require too large a commitment of scarce resources in the firm;
(b) the provision of certain services to a client may preclude the provision of other, more lucrative, services to the same client;
(c) the firm is dissatisfied with the risk/reward analysis.
Each firm should develop a conflict identification process. This process should include a client information database and a system that allows for timely access to the database by members of the firm so that real or potential conflicts can be recognized promptly. Conflict inquiries should be documented. The client information database should be kept up-to-date, and should not include confidential client information.

A member who practises in an international partnership, or has an association with a firm or firms which have an international practice, will have to exercise professional judgment when deciding who should be consulted when seeking information about conflicts and possible conflicts. Consultation will normally be limited to the country or countries in which the particular engagement will be conducted unless the member is aware of the potential for conflicts arising in a broader geographical area. The nature of the partnership or association and the interests of the potential client are two factors the member should consider.

For areas of practice where conflicts must usually be avoided rather than managed, a firm’s conflict identification process will likely need to be more extensive and formal and should include the identification of a person or persons in the firm to act above the wall as a conflict management officer or officers.

An effective conflict identification process will allow a firm to identify conflicts (or possible conflicts) early on in an engagement. The earlier a potential conflict is identified, the greater the chance the firm will be able to choose to manage the conflict, rather than avoid the engagement altogether.

**Step 2: Assess the Conflicts**

After conflicts and possible conflicts have been identified, a member should exercise professional judgment as to whether the conflict must be avoided altogether by declining the engagement, or whether the conflict can be appropriately managed.

When assessing the conflict, members and others in a firm should consider the following questions.

(a) Is the conflict solely a business conflict such that it does not require any action under the rules of professional conduct?

(b) Is the conflict one where consent to proceed can be implied from the client’s conduct, in keeping with common commercial practice, or is it necessary to obtain explicit consent?

(c) Does the conflict impair the member’s or firm’s independence and objectivity with respect to an assurance engagement?

(d) Does the conflict hinder the member’s ability to perform his or her duties?

(e) What will be the impact on the client’s ability to obtain professional services should the member or firm choose to decline the engagement? In smaller communities, where there are fewer practitioners available to serve clients’ needs, there may be more occasions when it is necessary to manage conflicts.

(f) Would a reasonable person be satisfied that the proposed conflict management approach is satisfactory to manage the conflict?

(g) Is it likely the requested service will go before a court where another client of the firm will be an opposite party? Unless the member has been asked to act as a fact finder or is providing information that is not contested, a court is likely to find it unacceptable for a firm to represent two clients who are litigating against each other.

(h) Will the institutional mechanisms available to the member or the firm be effective in managing the conflict? This will be determined by the facts of the situation and the onus will be on the member or the firm, where necessary, to demonstrate to the courts that the institutional mechanisms are effective in protecting confidential
client information.

(i) Will the member’s or the firm’s decision to avoid the conflict by resigning from the engagement be a commercially satisfactory solution for the client or clients in conflict? In many cases, the solution to avoid the conflict by resigning from the engagement with each of the clients will not be commercially satisfactory.

Once a member has identified a conflict and assessed its impact, he or she may decide to:

(a) Decline/Terminate the Engagement - For those conflicts that are not possible or appropriate to manage, the member should inform the client that the engagement will be declined or terminated; or
(b) Develop an Effective Conflict Management Approach – For manageable conflicts, the next step is to develop an effective Conflict Management Approach. Members must be aware that the decision to manage a conflict may be subjected to challenge later; or
(c) Accept the Engagement - For those conflicts that, by reason of their common acceptance in practice, it is deemed not necessary to manage through special procedures or obtaining consent, no action is required before the engagement is accepted.

Generally, most decisions with respect to business conflicts of interest will be made by a member or the firm based on a desire to retain the confidence of and relationship with existing clients and potential clients and will generally not involve consideration of the rules of professional conduct. For this reason, a member or firm may decide to do work for competitors of a client; not to do work for a direct competitor of a significant client; or, to seek permission before providing a particular service to a competitor of a client.

**Step 3: Develop a Conflict Management Approach**

Once the member or the firm has identified a conflict that is potentially manageable, the next step is to examine the various institutional mechanisms that are available within the firm to manage the conflict. A Conflict Management Approach is then developed, incorporating the various institutional mechanisms selected. While no specific approach is prescribed, each Conflict Management Approach must be effective and the member or firm must be able to demonstrate that it is effective. The member should then provide disclosure to the affected client or clients and obtain client consent to proceed.

**Choose the Institutional Mechanisms**

The following institutional mechanisms may be incorporated in an effective Conflict Management Approach.

**Firm Structure**

A firm may organize itself in a variety of ways to deal with conflict issues, such that the organization itself becomes an effective Conflict Management Technique. A firm should consider the adoption of some or all of the following conflict techniques as part of its organizational structure. It is noted that, depending on factors such as the size of a firm, not every technique will be appropriate for every firm:

(a) Adopt Conflict Management Policies that provide firm members with guidance on dealing with conflicts. These policies should recognize the role of professional judgment in the process and require members of the firm to be able to demonstrate that the interests of their clients will be served at a high professional standard. The policies should also require that clients be informed as to what they should expect when agreeing to allow a firm with a conflict to act on their behalf.
(b) Implement an Engagement Reporting Structure that is overseen by a Conflicts Management Committee or by one or more persons within the firm. The role of the Committee or responsible person(s) is to (i) identify, at the outset, potential conflicts, and decide whether to avoid the conflict or manage it and (ii) be informed of possible conflicts and provide assistance to others within the firm on exercising professional judgment with respect to conflict management. The person(s) determining or managing a particular conflict should be above the wall with respect to that conflict.

(c) Create separate areas of practice for specialty functions within the firm, which may act as a barrier to the passing of confidential client information from one practice area to another within a firm. The flow of information from one area to another should be restricted by firm policies and procedures. Such policies and procedures would not preclude the cross-departmental sharing of information by members of a particular client service team. Within each separate area, members must understand the expected limitations in sharing confidential client information across areas. It is recognized that the larger and more complex the firm, the more likely the need for creating separate areas of practice.

(d) Establish policies and procedures to limit access to files. Much of the information obtained throughout the course of an engagement is retained in the files of the firm, either electronically or paper-based. To maintain the confidentiality of these files, a firm may put in place a formal system that limits access to these files to persons who are working directly on the engagement, logs access to files, and documents any access exceptions. The physical segregation of particular confidential information may further enhance its protection. Broad access to non-public information that has been retained by a firm may be viewed by its clients as contrary to its responsibility to protect confidential information.

(e) Use blanket or engagement-specific confidentiality agreements signed by employees, which will emphasize the need to protect confidential information.

(f) In areas of practice where it is likely conflicts of interest will arise on a regular basis, use code names or numbers to assist in the use of Fire Walls and other conflict management tools.

**Fire Walls**

The effectiveness of Fire Walls will be improved by the use of internal procedures such as designating an above the wall person to monitor the activities within the Fire Wall(s) and to ensure that the firm as a whole is not acting in an inappropriate manner. This person would:

(a) ensure that the firm did not engage in activities that it was not appropriate or possible to manage;
(b) ensure that persons joining or leaving a team within the firm do not create new unacceptable conflicts;
(c) document the teams’ respect for the wall; and
(d) avoid involvement in or detailed knowledge of information contained within the wall.

(e) Fire Walls should involve some combination of the following organizational arrangements:
(f) physical segregation of people and files;
(g) an educational program, normally recurring, to emphasize the importance of not improperly or inadvertently divulging confidential information;
(h) strict and carefully defined procedures for dealing with a situation where it is felt that the wall should be crossed, and maintaining proper records where this occurs;
(i) monitoring by compliance officers of the effectiveness of the wall; and
(j) disciplinary sanctions where there has been a breach of the wall.

Cones of Silence

Cones of Silence may be used to:

(a) demonstrate foresight of the need to maintain client confidentiality and thereby assist a firm to manage conflicts arising in various areas of its practice;
(b) allow a firm specialist to work on a minor aspect of an engagement without being brought formally within a Fire Wall; and
(c) demonstrate the commitment of those involved.

In some rare circumstances, a Cone of Silence is demonstrated implicitly by the special conduct of a member or another person in the firm. In such circumstances, there should be observable evidence that the Cone of Silence will be effective.

The limitations on the use of Firm Structure, Fire Walls and Cones of Silence must always be recognized and considered in terms of whether the firm’s obligations to its clients can be fulfilled. A professional judgment must always be made in light of the particular facts and circumstances. Institutional mechanisms that are set up on an ad hoc basis, after a conflict is identified, will not be seen to protect confidential information that may already have been shared within a firm. Ongoing institutional mechanisms used on a regular basis are more likely to be effective and be seen to be effective that those set up on an ad hoc basis.

The uses of institutional mechanisms to restrict information flows between units or individuals within a firm may not be effective when:

(a) a client expects to have complete access to all of the firm’s resources. The use of a Fire Wall to protect the interest of another client may not be acceptable to the client.
(b) a member or firm is not able to demonstrate clearly that they have been and will continue to be highly effective in preventing the sharing of confidential information.
(c) there is a single department, operating unit or a large number of people coupled with a high turnover rate within the wall.
(d) a member attempts to hide behind the wall. The existence of a Fire Wall does not relieve a member or firm from making the appropriate enquiries or exercising professional judgment.

Provide Disclosure and Obtain Client Consent

A fundamental underpinning to the management of conflicts of interest involves informed consent by clients. Unless the conflict is one that reflects common commercial practice such that the client’s consent can be inferred from the client’s conduct, informed consent should be obtained by:

(a) notifying the client of the existence of a conflict; and
(b) either declining or resigning the engagement or obtaining the agreement from the client to proceed in spite of the conflict.

The onus is on the member or firm to be able to demonstrate that informed consent has been obtained. In cases where the conflict is one referred to in Rule 210.3(b), the informed consent must be implied by the client’s conduct and acceptance of the circumstances. In all other cases, it is desirable to obtain informed consent in writing. When written consent is not obtained, the client’s verbal consent and the details thereof should be noted in the member’s or the firm’s files. The more direct the conflict is between existing or potential clients, the more important it is for the firm to ensure that the clients and potential clients know that their interests may conflict with the interests of
other clients of the firm and that the firm has effective measures in place to ensure that confidentiality is maintained. In each case, members should use professional judgment in determining the nature and extent of disclosures required to be made to each client and the need to obtain consent in writing.

If notifying the client of the existence of a conflict would, in itself, constitute a breach of confidentiality, the member or firm will have no choice but to decline the engagement.

The appropriateness of managing a particular conflict is likely to depend on the particular facts and circumstances. As circumstances evolve, clients who initially agreed to allow a firm with a conflict to act may change their position. The risk and consequences of this possibility should be considered at the outset.

When a member enters into discussions with a client about the impact of possible conflicts on the client’s interest, the member should specifically address how the obligations to the client will be met and what restrictions, if any, there will be on access to the expertise of the firm.

It appears that the courts will recognize the contractual clarification of a member’s obligations by either express or implied terms along with disclosure and consent, for example:

a) An engagement letter or contract may be used to clarify the member’s and the client’s obligations in an engagement. The following wording might be used to inform a client of potential conflicts in an engagement, restrictions that could apply and the use of institutional mechanisms to protect confidential client information:

“We provide a wide range of services for a large number of clients and may be in a position where we are providing services to clients whose interests may conflict with your own. We cannot be certain that we will identify all such situations that exist or may develop and it is difficult for us to anticipate all situations that you might perceive to conflict. We therefore request that you notify us promptly of any potential conflict affecting the Contract of which you are, or become, aware. Where the above circumstances are identified by us or you and we believe that your interests can be properly safeguarded by the implementation of appropriate procedures, we will discuss and agree with you the arrangements that we will put in place to preserve confidentiality and to ensure that the advice and opinions which you receive from us are wholly independent of the advice and opinions that we provide to other clients. Just as we will not use information confidential to you for the advantage of a third party, we will not use confidential information obtained from any other party for your advantage.”

b) Written expression in public policy statements of clarifications of obligations undertaken also appears to be a tool that a member or firm may use to further demonstrate the management of possible conflicts of interest.

c) To the extent that the matter is not dealt with in the foregoing, clarification of a member’s or firm’s obligations may also be included in final reports, proposals, etc.

In the engagement letter, public policy statement or contract, the relationship may be clarified by:

(a) Clearly defining the obligations owed to the other party. This may be accomplished through an exclusion clause;

(b) Clearly delineating the rights and duties of all parties; and

(c) Where a conflict is managed in part by a client’s informed consent, including provisions that set out the consequences should the client terminate its consent. It might be agreed, for example, that in such circumstances the member or firm
would (or would not) be able to continue to act for one of the other parties, and if so, which one.

**Step 4: Assess the Effectiveness of a Conflict Management Plan**

After choosing the institutional mechanisms that will be relied upon, the member should assess the overall effectiveness of the plan. The onus will be on the member or firm to be able to demonstrate that the institutional mechanisms are effective in protecting confidential client information. In a particular case, the court may not accept the use of institutional mechanisms to manage a conflict. Members must assess the risk of such a finding by a court on a case-by-case basis and, where appropriate, obtain legal advice.

When assessing the effectiveness of the selected institutional mechanisms, members should ask the following questions:

(a) Will the institutional mechanisms work effectively in practice? For example, it may not be possible to obtain the informed consent of two clients as the mere disclosure of the issue to one client might involve the disclosure of confidential information of the other client.

(b) Are the persons required to perform the work able to remain within a Cone of Silence or behind a Fire Wall for the required period of time?

**Step 5: Re-evaluate the Plan During Engagement**

A client relationship will often exist for an extended period of time during which the client’s interests may change. When in the course of an engagement for a client, conflict or possible conflict with an engagement for another client is discovered, a member or firm should consider the following actions:

(a) resign from both assignments without disclosure of the detailed reasons if such disclosure would also disclose confidential client information; or with appropriate disclosure of the detailed reasons if confidential client information can be protected;

(b) obtain informed written consent from both clients to continue their engagements in spite of the conflicts;

(c) seek the informed written consent of both sides to continue for one side;

(d) after obtaining the required consent in (b) or (c), use existing institutional mechanisms such as Cones of Silence or Fire Walls, to protect confidential client information in appropriate circumstances.

When the discovery of a conflict occurs while an engagement is in progress, it may be more difficult to then implement institutional mechanisms to protect confidential client information. It will also be difficult to clarify the firm’s obligations by indicating that the firm intends to accept engagements for clients whose interests may from time to time conflict with those of existing clients.

If, however, institutional mechanisms such as Cones of Silence or Fire Walls have been in place from the outset of both client assignments, or clients have been informed at the outset of possible conflicts, the task of dealing with new conflicts that arise is made easier.

**CI 210/6 Documentation and Other Considerations**

Since problems with the management of conflicts may arise in the future, it is important to document the process by which conflicts are assessed and managed. Documentation will normally include considerations with respect to the identification of conflicts; the assessment of conflicts and the facts considered in making the assessment; the conflict management plan adopted with the reasons the member or firm believes the plan will be effective; and the ongoing assessment of the plan’s effectiveness.
When developing a Conflict Management Approach, the firm must ensure that the Conflict Management Techniques selected are robust enough to demonstrate that the client’s interest will be served within the terms of the engagement.

The use of such techniques requires the use of professional judgment since ultimately their effectiveness and acceptability will be judged using the standard of “the expectation of an informed, reasonable observer”.

In those areas of practice where relationships or engagements exist for extended periods of time, the question of potential conflicts should be addressed at least annually, perhaps as part of the ongoing client continuance review.
CONFLICT MANAGEMENT DECISION CHART

The process for dealing with conflicts may be illustrated by the following flowchart.

1. Conduct Conflict Search
   Were Any Conflicts Identified?
   - No → Accept Engagement
   - Yes → Are the Conflicts Solely Business Conflicts That Can Be Managed?
     - Yes → Accept Engagement
     - No → Assess the Conflicts. Can Consent To Act Be Inferred From the Client’s Conduct, in Keeping With Common Commercial Practise?
       - Yes → Accept Engagement
       - No → Can the Conflicts Be Managed?
         - No → Decline/Terminate Engagement
         - Yes → Develop Conflict Management Plan
1.1. Assess the Plan Will It Be Effective?
   - No → Decline/Terminate Engagement
   - Yes → Has Consent Been Obtained From All Affected Clients?
     - Yes → Accept Engagement Implement Plan
     - No → Decline/Terminate Engagement
   - Effective → Continue Engagement
2. Review periodically for:
   - New Conflicts
   - Continuing Effectiveness Of Management Plan
   - Effective → Continue Engagement

Section CI [136]  June 2014
DUTY TO REPORT BREACH OF RULES OF PROFESSIONAL CONDUCT

CI 211/1 It is in the public interest that a member be required to report to the Institute apparent breaches by another member of the rules of professional conduct. The good reputation of the profession could adversely be affected if such matters were not reported. Rules 211.1 and 211.2 are not intended to require a member to report trivial matters or minor perceived faults of another member. Each mistake or omission by a member is not necessarily a breach of the rules of professional conduct. In deciding when to report, a member should believe that the matter raises doubt as to the competence, reputation or integrity of another member.

CI 211/2 Rule 211.1 sets out specific situations where it does not apply. For example, the rule does not apply to disclosure of information obtained by a member

(a) in the course of the member's employment by an organization, such as a government taxation authority, where there is a legal requirement imposed by statute to maintain the confidentiality of information obtained through this employment;
(b) in the member's role as a practice inspector or practice advisor, who has been exempted for the purpose and to the extent specified by Council;
(c) in the course of an engagement, such as a litigation support engagement, when disclosure will result in the loss of solicitor-client privilege.

CI 211/3 Under certain circumstances, such as the forensic investigation of a fraud, Rule 211.2 permits the reporting of a matter to be delayed until

(a) the client has consented to the release of such information, or
(b) the information has become known to third parties other than legal advisors, or
(c) it becomes apparent to the member that the information will not become known to third parties other than legal advisors.

CI 211/4 Rule 211.2 attempts to strike a balance between the member's duty to the client and the member's duty to protect the public interest and maintain the reputation of the profession. Clients may assume that a member will not disclose information without consent, resist the obligation of the member to report, and even be reluctant to engage a member because of the reporting obligation. In addition, reporting without the client's knowledge or consent could result in a claim against the member. Thus the client must be informed that while the member will seek consent to report the information, ultimately, if the consent is not forthcoming, the obligation to the public and the profession will prevail and the member will be obliged to report.

CI 211/5 A member reporting a matter does not have to carry out an investigation or reach a decision as to whether the rules of professional conduct have been breached. However, it is not enough simply to have a suspicion that there has been professional misconduct. What must be reported are the facts as known to the member along with any supporting documentation.

CI 211/6 If a member knows that a matter involving apparent misconduct on the part of another member has come to the Institute's attention, the member does not have a duty to report the matter. The member must report if the member knows that certain facts have been concealed, distorted or otherwise not reported.
CI 211/7 A member who, having reviewed Rules 211.1 and 211.2 and this interpretation, is in doubt as to whether a matter should be reported should consult Institute staff for advice and guidance. In certain circumstances, such as those described in paragraph 4 above, the member should also consider obtaining legal advice.

HANDLING OF TRUST FUNDS AND OTHER PROPERTY

CI 212.1/1 In this Interpretation the term “trust funds” includes all amounts received by a member to be held or disbursed by the member on the instructions of the person from whom or on whose behalf the amounts are received, such person being referred to as “client”.

CI 212.1/2 While members may want to obtain legal advice with respect to complying with the law relating to trusts, the following should assist members in understanding the Rule:

(a) each trust relationship should be documented in writing;
(b) trust funds, unless subject to written instructions to the contrary, should be deposited without delay to a separate bank account, “a trust account”, which may be an account in the name of a specific client, but should in all cases include in its title the word “trust”;
(c) withdrawals or disbursements from a trust account should be limited to:
   (i) funds properly required for payment to or on behalf of the client; or
   (ii) funds properly required for or toward payment of the member’s fees for services rendered or disbursements for which a billing has been rendered and approved, preferably in writing, by the client;
(d) in the absence of express agreement to the contrary, any interest earned on trust funds should be accounted for to the client;
(e) members should maintain records to show clearly trust funds received, paid or held on behalf of clients, clearly distinguishing the funds of each client from those of other clients and from the member’s own funds; and
(f) members should establish appropriate safeguards and controls over receipts and disbursements of trust accounts.

CI 212.1/3 There may be occasions where a member receives other property in trust in lieu of funds. Appropriate safeguards and controls should be established over these properties including, if applicable, the safekeeping of securities or other negotiable instruments.

CI 212.1/4 A member may consider using a lawyer or trust company where amounts are large or the situation is unusual or contentious.

CI 212.1/5 If the engagement is one governed by bankruptcy and insolvency legislation, members should refer to the provisions of such legislation and any regulations and directives enacted thereunder.

CI 212.1/6 Members acting as executors, administrators or trustees should refer to the objectivity standards as set out in Rule 204 and the related Council Interpretations.

FEE QUOTATIONS

CI 214/1 A prospective client may wish to obtain some indication of the fee for a member’s or firm’s services. A member or firm discussing a possible assignment may not be in a position to quote a fee or fee range without becoming more familiar with the requirements of the client. For example, in an audit assignment it would generally be necessary to become familiar with the prospective client’s accounting policies and procedures and internal controls. In an accounting assignment it would generally be necessary to assess
the prospective client's books and records and the application of the related accounting policies. Without becoming so familiarized or making an appropriate assessment, it would not be possible to estimate the fee.

CI 214/2  As provided in Rule 205, a member, student or firm should not sign or associate with any letter, report, statement, representation or financial statement which the member, student or firm knows or should know is false or misleading. Accordingly, a member or firm should not make a representation that specific professional services in current or future periods will be performed for either a stated fee, estimated fee, or fee range if it is likely at the time of the representation that such fees will be substantially increased and the prospective client is not advised of that likelihood.

CI 214/3  A member or firm obtaining work for a fee significantly lower than that charged by the predecessor, or quoted by others, should be aware that there may be a perception that independence, where required, and/or quality of work could be impaired.

FEES  Introduction

CI 215/1  A member is entitled to charge for professional services such fees as the member considers to be fair and reasonable for the work undertaken. Generally it is prudent to refer to fees and the basis on which they are to be computed in an engagement letter to the client or potential client.

Contingent Fees

CI 215/2  When providing a professional service for a fee payable only where there is a specified determination or result of the service, or for a fee the amount of which is to be fixed, whether as a percentage or otherwise, by reference to the determination or result of the service ("contingent fee"), members, firms and professional corporations must bear in mind the requirements of Rules 202, 203, 205 and 206. These rules require a member to perform services with integrity and due care; to sustain professional competence in all functions in which the member practices; not to associate with any letter, report, statement or representation which the member knows or should know is false or misleading; and to comply with the generally accepted standards of practice of the profession. Rule 206.2 requires firms to establish and maintain policies and procedures designed to ensure compliance with professional standards.

CI 215/3  Rule 215 prohibits a contingent fee arrangement where the member providing the service is required to be free of any influence that would impair the member's professional judgment or objectivity in respect of the particular engagement. This means that a contingent fee arrangement is not permitted for an assurance or specified auditing procedures engagement. In addition, a compilation engagement may not be performed on a contingent fee basis.

CI 215/4  A member, firm or professional corporation also must ensure that a contingent fee arrangement in a client engagement does not, in the view of a reasonable observer, create an influence which would impair a member's or a member's partner's professional judgment or objectivity with respect to another engagement for the same client which requires objectivity on the part of the service provider. For example, a member may be seen to have compromised professional judgment or objectivity with respect to an audit of financial statements where the member, in giving an opinion, may be seen to be supporting a material amount which is reported in the client's financial statements and upon which a contingent fee for the member or the member's firm or the professional corporation through which the member performs the engagement is based.
The following examples of engagements undertaken on a contingent fee basis are provided as guidance to assist members, firms and professional corporations in determining whether members’ professional judgment or objectivity may be compromised with respect to the types of engagements for which objectivity is required by the rules of professional conduct or would be seen to influence the result of a compilation engagement.

Examples of engagements which, if undertaken on a contingent fee basis, would not normally be seen to impair professional judgment or objectivity with respect to another engagement for the same client which requires objectivity on the part of the service provider (such as an audit or review of financial statements) are:

- commodity tax refund claims;
- assisting with tax appeals and preparing notices of objection to tax assessments and reassessments; and
- executive search services.

Examples of engagements which, if undertaken on a contingent fee basis, may be seen to impair professional judgment or objectivity with respect to another engagement for the same client which requires objectivity on the part of the service provider (such as an audit or review of financial statements) are:

- valuation engagements which involve the expression of a professional opinion;
- assisting with the purchase or sale of all or part of a business;
- financing proposals, the success of which is dependent, in whole or in part, upon the client’s financial statements or the client’s future oriented financial information;
- litigation support and forensic investigations which use financial statements or other financial information of the client or result in reports which impact on or bear a relationship to the client’s financial statements;
- business interruption insurance claims; and
- re-engineering or efficiency studies, the results of which could materially impact on the client’s financial statements or other financial information.

The examples in paragraphs 4 and 5 are not intended to be exhaustive or conclusive in determining whether a particular engagement may be undertaken on a contingent fee basis. A member must always exercise professional judgment in concluding whether a particular engagement may be undertaken on a contingent fee basis in accordance with Rule 215.3

If the application of Rule 215.1 prohibits an engagement from being provided on a contingent fee basis, a member, firm or professional corporation is not precluded from having regard at the time of billing to criteria which include:

(a) the level of training and experience of the persons engaged in the work;
(b) the time expended by the persons engaged in the work;
(c) the degree of risk and responsibility which the work entails;
(d) the priority and importance of the work to the client;
(e) the value of the work to the client; and
(f) any other circumstances which may exist (e.g. fees fixed by a court or other public authority, fees in insolvency work and the administration of estates and
trusts which, by statute or tradition, are often based on a percentage of realizations and/or assets under administration).

Value billing should not be used, however, to justify what is in substance an otherwise inappropriate contingent fee arrangement.

**CI 215/8** Members, firms and professional corporations are cautioned that professional engagements may be subject to standards of other professional bodies or organizations which must be considered in determining whether contingent fees are appropriate for a particular engagement.

**CI 215/9** Definition
For the purpose of Rule 215.3, “partner” means a member’s partner, whether or not a member of the Institute, in either the member's public accounting practice or a related function practice, and, for greater certainty, includes any person who is not a member but who is a partner or shareholder in the related function practice.

**PAYMENT OR RECEIPT OF COMMISSIONS**

**CI 216/1** From time to time, members may be asked by investment dealers and possibly insurance brokers to act as agents or sub-agents for the sale of securities or the placement of insurance. A member in public practice receives fees from clients for services which, in some cases, will include advice on the utilization of surplus funds and, often, counselling on insurance coverage. There is bound to be a conflict of interest between this position and that of acting as agent or sub-agent for the sale of securities or the placement of insurance. Acceptance by a practising member of a commission, finder's fee or other remuneration from third parties for such agency services would be incompatible with the principle of objectivity which is fundamental to our profession.

**ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION**

**CI 217.1/1** It is in the public interest and in the interest of all members of the Institute that members and firms be allowed to advertise or otherwise promote services available and the basis of fees charged. Members should be able to receive publicity, identifying them as members of the Institute, in areas which reflect their competence and knowledge, in matters which are within the scope of activities of members of the Institute, and in matters of civic or public interest. Advertising and publicity should contribute to public respect for the profession and thus to the professional standing of all members. It is the responsibility of the member or firm to ensure that any promotional material produced by or under the control of the member or firm is factual, and that any commentary is not misleading.

**CI 217.1/2** As guidance to members and firms, the following outlines what is acceptable conduct in a number of areas. Unless specifically noted, this Interpretation also applies to members otherwise engaged or employed, and to firms or corporations engaged in a related business or practice. The objective is to ensure that advertising or other promotional communication is accurate and factual.

**CI 217.1/3** Members and firms that engage public relations, recruiting or other agents are responsible for ensuring that no activity for which the agent is engaged contravenes the rules. While there are matters in which the use of skilled assistance can be advantageous, it should be recognized that there is an inherent danger of contravention of the rules and that close control must be exercised to avoid breaches.

**CI 217.1/4** A member or firm may be the subject of, or may be referred to, in any bona fide news story (including interviews and commentaries) or may publish any work (including any professional paper, report, article, etc.) related to the member’s or firm’s professional
services, provided that the member or firm uses all best efforts to ensure that none of the contents of such news story or work violates the requirements of Rule 217.

FALSE OR MISLEADING ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION

CI 217.1/5 It is not appropriate for members and firms to use advertising or promotional communications or media, including electronic media, that bring disrepute on the profession.

CI 217.1/6 Members and firms should ensure, at all times, that any public reference (in promotional material, websites, stationery, reports, etc.) to themselves, or their services, is accurate. The following are examples of false or misleading references:

(a) any implication that the practising unit is larger than it is, such as by use of plural descriptions or other misleading use of words;
(b) any implication that a person is a partner of a firm, when the person is not;
(c) any implication that a person is entitled to practice as a public accountant, if the person is not licensed as a public accountant;
(d) any reference to representation or association which is not in conformity with the facts;
(e) the use of obsolete or out of date information;
(f) any reference to particular services of any member, person, or firm where the member, person or firm is not currently able to provide those services;
(g) any statement that the practice is restricted to one or more functions, if assignments are accepted in other practice functions;
(h) any statement that may create false or unjustified expectations as to the results of an engagement;
(i) the use in the letterhead of any member or practising office of the name of a non-member which is not clearly and separately identified.

CI 217.1/7 Any reference to fees which is intended for the information of the public (including prospective clients) should not be misleading. The following are examples of false or misleading fee references:

(a) fee information if service at the fee specified will not be available on an ongoing basis for a reasonable length of time;
(b) a quotation of specific fee information if service at the fee specified is conditional upon the acceptance by the client of other services, unless such condition is disclosed;
(c) a “rate per hour” or fee or fee range for specified services, which does not give a reasonable description of the services included;
(d) fee information which quotes an unqualified “average rate”, fee or fee range for services when a particular assignment might likely be billed at a significantly higher amount;
(e) fee information, using terms such as “from $X” where fees, rates or ranges are not sufficiently representative of those normally charged.

CI 217.1/8 Members and firms should ensure that any controllable public references to them, their services or accomplishments, whether written or oral, are not false or misleading.

ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION - UNFAVORABLE REFLECTIONS

CI 217.1/9 Since any member or firm may be able to offer services similar to those offered by others, it is not appropriate for any member or firm to claim superiority with respect to the competence or integrity of any other member or firm.
ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION - USE OF THE TERM “SPECIALIST”

CI 217.1/10 Individuals who have earned the designation “Chartered Accountant” have demonstrated a high level of education and professional experience. To hold oneself out as a specialist is to imply possession of particular skills, talents and experience.

CI 217.1/11 Specialization must be distinguished from expertise. Expertise implies extraordinary knowledge about a specific subject - no matter how broad or how narrow. Specialization implies a concentration of professional skills developed and applied over a meaningful period of time. A person may be an expert without being a specialist.

CI 217.1/12 Members designating themselves, their practising offices or related function businesses or practices as specialists must be prepared to substantiate the claim. Failure to provide advice to a specialist standard after accepting an engagement to do so may have serious legal consequences.

CI 217.1/13 A member seeking identification as a specialist should be designated as a specialist by the appropriate CICA Alliance For Excellence or Accredited Organization or should meet the following minimum criteria:

(a) the member should be recognized as such by peers, clients and business associates;
(b) a significant percentage of the member’s time over a sustained period should have been spent in the specialty;
(c) the member should have completed courses and/or successfully completed appropriate examinations, if applicable, for the specialty;
(d) the member should continue professional development relevant to the specialty, such as attendance at courses, teaching or writing; and
(e) the member should continue to devote a significant percentage of time to the specialty.

CI 217.1/14 Improperly claiming specialist status may violate one or more of the following rules:

- Rule 201.1, which requires members and firms to act in a manner that will maintain the good reputation of the profession;
- Rule 202, which requires members to perform their services with integrity and due care;
- Rule 203.1, which requires members to sustain their professional competence in all functions in which they practise;
- Rule 210, which requires members and firms to avoid conflicts of interest; and
- Rule 217.1(a), which requires members to refrain from making statements that cannot be substantiated.

SOLICITATION – PROFESSIONAL ENGAGEMENTS

CI 217.2/1 Solicitation is an approach to a client or prospective client for the purpose of offering services. The approach may be made in person, through direct mail (including fax or e-mail) or via a third party such as a telemarketer. Regardless of the method used, the approach must comply with the rules which govern integrity, conflict of interest, payment of commissions and advertising or which otherwise regulate members and firms.

CI 217.2/2 Communication with a prospective client should cease when the prospect so requests either directly to the member or firm or through the Institute. Any continued contact will be regarded as harassment, which is contrary to the rule.
Participation in a trade or a financial services show is not prohibited by the rules. The conduct of the member or firm at the show must be in accordance with the rules and the follow up of contacts made at the show should be in accordance with Paragraphs 1 and 2.

The distribution of technical information such as a tax letter to prospective clients and others is not prohibited.

Members and firms may serve the interests of the public and other members of the Institute by presenting educational and informational seminars and may distribute invitations to attend seminars and provide related informational material. Seminars may be advertised as permitted by Rule 217.1. Such advertising may invite the public to request brochures, letters or other descriptive or informational material from the members or firms responsible for the seminar. Members and firms may arrange, promote, present or otherwise be responsible for such seminars, with or without a fee, subject to the rules.

A member or firm participating in a seminar arranged for, or promoted by, a non-member shall ensure that any reference to the member or firm at the seminar and in its promotion complies with the rules.

SOLICITATION - CLIENTELE OF A DECEASED MEMBER

When a member who is a sole proprietor dies, the member's executors should be provided a reasonable opportunity to arrange for transfer of the deceased member's clients to another member or firm. The Institute may be able to assist the estates of deceased members in such circumstances. It is recognized that, in some cases, clients may require immediate service and may not be able to await the orderly disposal of the practice. Any member or firm who is approached to take over the account of a prospective client who had been served by a deceased member should notify the executor upon assuming the account.

ENDORSEMENTS

"Endorsement" means

(a) public promotion, support, sponsorship, recommendation, guarantee, sanction or validation of any product or service of another person or entity; or

(b) public indication or implication that the member either
   (i) uses a product or service of another person or entity, or
   (ii) has an association with a product or service of another person or entity that is of a nature that has enabled the member or firm to formulate an opinion or belief as to the quality of the product or service or the benefits to be derived by the purchasers or users of the product or service; or

(c) consent, including by acquiescence, to the use of the member's or firm's name in connection with any of the activities described in (a) or (b).

Providing a WebTrust™ or other assurance service does not constitute an endorsement of the client's products or services.

When endorsing a product or service that the member or firm uses in business or professional practice, the member or firm should first make an appropriate investigation or assessment of the product or service so as to be able to express an opinion or state a belief about it.

When endorsing a personal product or service, the member or firm should have sufficient familiarity or acquaintance with the product or service to make an informed and considered decision about it.
When endorsing any product or service, a member or firm must take care to ensure that the endorsement does not or would not, in the view of a reasonable observer, impair independence with respect to an engagement that requires independence.

RETENTION OF DOCUMENTATION AND WORKING PAPERS

Cases may arise where a member may be required to substantiate procedures carried out in the course of an assignment. If the files do not contain sufficient documentation to confirm the nature and extent of the work done, the member concerned may well have great difficulty in showing that proper procedures were in fact carried out. The importance of adequate documentation cannot be over-emphasized; without it, a member’s ability to outline and defend professional work is seriously impaired.

There is an obligation to keep the working papers for a reasonable period of time. Unfortunately, it is not possible to give an all-encompassing guideline as to what is reasonable. What is reasonable varies with the circumstances. One of the problems is that an action alleging negligence arises, not when the work alleged to be negligent is done, but when the damage caused by the alleged negligence becomes known or should become known to the person or entity harmed. Working papers should not be destroyed until legal advice has been obtained with respect to the limitation periods in force in the member’s jurisdiction.

Further, a member should retain documents for a period of time to properly service clients. A general guideline would be:

(a) a period of ten years, during which all records are maintained; and
(b) a longer period of time, perhaps indefinitely, or the actual time period where required specifically by statute, for all useful files, information and records which may assist the member to properly service clients. Such useful files, information and records could include:

- financial statements
- agreements, contracts and leases
- investment/share capital information
- written opinions
- tax files and assessment notices
- detailed continuity schedules for such items as fixed assets and future income taxes
- other files, information and records as appropriate.

Members may find it helpful to take reasonable steps to segregate information that is property of the client (“client information”) from information that is proprietary to the firm (“proprietary information”) or to ensure that they have the ability to easily segregate such client information. The client may choose to engage another accountant in the future, or access to the client information may be demanded through litigation discovery or other legal means. Therefore, it is in the interest of the member or firm to be able to provide client information without also disclosing proprietary information. Accordingly, client information, including books and records, general ledgers, account groupings, account compositions, continuity schedules and similar client information should either be maintained separately or be readily separable from audit or review programs and working papers, tax review documentation and other proprietary information.
When the member maintains the client's books and records on behalf of the client, it will be particularly helpful if such client books and records are maintained separately from documentation related to any other service that the member or firm may provide. Copies of the books and records should be provided to the client regularly.

**COMMUNICATION WITH PREDECESSOR - CHANGES IN PROFESSIONAL APPOINTMENTS**

**CI 302/1** The purpose of the Rule is to protect a potential successor from accepting an appointment before that member has knowledge of the circumstances under which the previous accountant's services were discontinued. Knowledge of these circumstances might well influence that member against accepting the engagement. The recommended procedure outlined below should be followed.

**CI 302/2** When a member has been asked by a prospective client to accept an engagement it is recommended that the client be advised that the incumbent should be notified of the proposed change by the client. The member should then enquire of the incumbent whether there are any circumstances that should be taken into account which might influence the member's decision whether or not to accept the appointment. The member should not take up any work on the account until the member has communicated with the incumbent, except that in the client's interest, acceptance of the offered appointment should not be unduly delayed through the failure of the incumbent to reply, if every reasonable effort has been made to communicate with the incumbent.

**CI 302/3** The incumbent must respond promptly to a communication of this nature. If there are no circumstances that the member should be made aware of, a simple response to this effect is all that is necessary. If, on the other hand, the incumbent is aware of circumstances that the member should take into account which might influence the decision whether or not to accept the appointment, the incumbent should first consider the question of confidentiality. If it appears that the circumstances cannot be disclosed because of confidentiality, the response to the member should state that there are, in the opinion of the incumbent, circumstances which should be taken into account, but that they cannot be disclosed without the consent of the client. Although the circumstances which the incumbent has in mind may be matters of public record, the incumbent must still consider whether confidentiality precludes the disclosure of the exact circumstances to the successor. Where confidentiality is in doubt, legal advice should be sought.

**CI 302/4** The successor should also enquire of the predecessor whether there is any ongoing business of which the successor should be aware, in order to ensure that the client's interests are protected. On the part of the predecessor, there must be readiness to cooperate with the successor, recognizing that the client's interests are paramount whether or not there are fees owing to the predecessor by the former client.

**CI 302/5** Members should be cognizant of the provisions of any federal and provincial legislation, including securities legislation regulating changes in professional appointments or requiring notification of such changes to incumbents.

**CO-OPERATION WITH SUCCESSOR ACCOUNTANT**

**CI 303/1** When a client decides, for any reason, to change from one practitioner to another, the change should be facilitated on the basis of the following fundamental assumptions:

(a) the client's interests be placed ahead of the interests of the member;
(b) the client is free to have work performed by the practitioner of choice; and
(c) professional courtesy and co-operation be maintained between members in complying with the client’s wishes.

CI 303/2 A member should supply reasonable information to the successor about the client. Where the time and inconvenience in giving the information to the successor is not significant there should normally be no charge for this work.

CI 303/3 A reasonable request for information related to the client includes an opportunity for the successor to discuss with the predecessor the following:

(a) the client’s accounting policies and consistency of application;
(b) the work carried out by the predecessor with respect to material balances in the client’s financial statements; and
(c) the financial statement groupings and account balance composition (for example, future income taxes) where the client does not have the information.

Members are also reminded that the *CICA Handbook – Assurance* includes requirements with respect to obtaining audit evidence related to opening balances. Professional courtesy dictates that the predecessor should co-operate with the successor for the purpose of meeting this requirement through discussion and review of working papers. In addition, the client’s interests are likely to be best served when the predecessor co-operates as fully as possible with successors for this purpose. Reasonable opportunity to review and discuss working papers does not preclude the use of appropriate waivers or releases. However, appropriate waivers or releases should not include requirements for confidentiality which would contravene the successor’s obligation to report breaches by another member pursuant to Rule 211 or prevent the successor from otherwise properly serving the best interests of the client.

CI 303/4 Notwithstanding the fact that the best interests of the client are served by co-operation between accountants in the transfer of client information and the provision of other reasonable information necessary to meet professional requirements, Rule 303 is not intended to require the transfer of certain proprietary information, and accordingly, members are not expected to supply copies of audit or review programs and working papers or tax review documentation. Ordinarily, predecessors are not expected to supply copies of more than the previous year’s financial statements and applicable tax returns, unless the member is remunerated for time and expenses to do so.

CI 303/5 Property of the client does not include information that is proprietary to the firm, such as audit or review programs and working papers, review documentation, software or other proprietary material or information.

CI 303/6 The medium that facilitates a timely and efficient transfer may vary depending on the nature of the engagement and the nature of the property of the client. For greater clarity and without limiting the general meaning of “property of the client”, such property includes original transaction documents (cheques, receipts, invoices, for example), banking records, ledgers and similar records. It would also ordinarily include tax returns and information related to financial statement groupings, account balance composition and continuity schedules that have been prepared by the predecessor accountant for the client’s benefit. In addition, it includes any of the foregoing or other property of the client that is readily available in electronic form where the client does not also have an electronic copy of the records or information.

CI 303/7 “Property of the client that is readily available in electronic form” is not intended to include electronic information that cannot be easily segregated from proprietary information of the
member or firm. Basic financial information such as trial balances, leadsheets and continuity schedules should always be provided, but need not be provided electronically if they are incorporated into software that includes audit or review programs and working papers or tax review documentation. Accordingly, while members should always consider which readily available transfer medium will best serve the interests of the client, members are not required to provide client information electronically in every case.

CI 303/8 Council Interpretation 218(4) includes guidance on facilitating the separation of information that is property of the client from proprietary information of the firm. Such separation of information is recommended to facilitate the ease with which a predecessor can cooperate with a successor to properly serve the client’s interests.

PRACTICE NAMES

CI401/1 It is in the interest of all members of the Institute that members and firms be allowed to conduct their practices under names which reflect their individual preferences and which are appropriate for their particular marketplaces. This interpretation sets out guidance for members and firms in the selection of practice names and in the identification with other professional service organizations.

CI401/2 Members, firms and related businesses or practices should ensure, at all times, that any information contained in their practice names about themselves, their firms or their services is accurate. The following are examples of practice names containing inappropriate information:

(a) any implication in the practice name that the practising unit is larger than it is, such as by use of plural descriptions or other misleading use of words. The use of “and Company” or similar wording in a practice name is permitted, if it is not misleading with respect to the total number of full-time equivalent persons providing professional services within the practice;
(b) any implication in the practice name that a member is a partner or a former partner of a practice, when the member is not;
(c) any reference to representation or association which is not in conformity with the facts;
(d) any reference in the practice name to particular services provided where the practice is not currently able to provide those services;
(e) any statement in the practice name that may create false or unjustified expectations as to the results of a particular engagement.

CI401/3 When a member, firm or related business or practice participates in an organization, whose members practise public accounting internationally, with professional engagements accepted and reports or opinions issued in the international name, the member, firm or related business or practice may refer to such international name on professional stationery and in name plates, directory listings, announcements and brochures by using the term “internationally”, or “international firm”. General references to “offices throughout the world” or “offices in principal cities throughout the world” imply broad coverage and should be used only where the international organization’s members practise public accounting in many countries.

CI401/4 A member, firm or related business or practice may have an arrangement with another person or organization whereby one acts for the other in a particular location, and the assignment, by agreement, may be in the name of one of them. In such circumstances it is appropriate, if desired, for the member, firm or related business or practice to refer to the fact of such representation by a suitable reference to the location and the name and/or address and professional designation of the representative, with a description of
the relationship as being “represented by”. If representation arrangements exist in a
number of locations it may not be possible to give full details of each, and in such case it
would be appropriate, if desired, to refer to the fact of representation in the particular
locations, specifying the locations individually. Generally references such as
“represented throughout the world”, which may not be factual and may be misleading,
should be avoided. In any public reference to representation, the representative must be
a person or organization practising public accounting.

CI401/5

Members, firms and related businesses or practices may associate themselves with
international organizations which do not practise public accounting but which consist of
members who are practising public accounting and which exist primarily to provide their
members with access to international public accounting services. In these cases it is
appropriate to make public reference on professional stationery and elsewhere to
membership in a bona fide international organization by using a term such as “a member
of (name), an international association of accounting firms”. Terms such as
“internationally” or “international firm” should not be used. General references such as
“members throughout the world” should be used only where there are in fact members of
the organization in many countries. References such as “represented throughout the
world” should be avoided unless they are factual and not misleading.

CI401/6

Members, firms and related businesses or practices should ensure that their practice
names or styles are not self-laudatory and do not claim superiority over any other
member, firm or related business or practice. Care should be taken in using the word
“The” in the firm name so that it does not imply exclusivity.

Practice names that might tend to lower public respect for the profession should not be
used. Care should also be exercised with respect to the use of acronyms.

CI401/7

In general, approval will be given to non-personal firm names unless they are misleading
or contravene professional good taste. However, there may be certain other
considerations which will affect the approval decision. A practice name that is so similar
to that of another firm registered in the same area as to cause confusion in the minds of
the public may not be approved. Consideration will also be given to cultural sensitivities
in deciding whether to approve a non-personal firm name.

CI401/8

A firm that is registered in a province as a limited liability partnership may be required by
legislation or regulation to carry on business under its limited liability partnership name.
Where the firm also carries on business in Nova Scotia, its members will be deemed not
to be in violation of Rule 401 in Nova Scotia simply by virtue of the fact that provincial
statutes in Nova Scotia do not recognize limited liability partnerships.

CI 401/9

Council, in its discretion, is permitted to be flexible in transitional situations. For example,
a member engaged in the practice of public accounting as a sole proprietor or, where
permitted, an incorporated professional, may apply to Council for permission to practise
for a specified period of time under both the member’s approved name and, with the
predecessor’s written authorization, the name used by a predecessor sole proprietor or
firm.

Other situations where transitional flexibility may be granted include those where a
previously approved firm name becomes inappropriate. An example of such a situation
would occur when, due to the departure of a partner, the firm name becomes misleading
with respect to the size of the firm. In such cases, the member or firm may apply to
Council for permission to continue to use the name for a specified period of time.
OPERATION OF MEMBERS' OFFICES

Cl 404.2/1 The purpose of the Rule is to ensure that the client's public accounting needs will be met in each instance by properly qualified professional personnel.

Cl 404.2/2 A part-time office is a practising office which is operated by a member who is practicing out of the office on less than a full-time basis. Such an office is one where the member having personal charge and management is not normally accessible to meet the needs of clients throughout the usual business hours of the community in which the office is located.

Cl 404.2/3 A part-time office may be operated by a member in public practice if the following conditions are met:

(a) the part-time office is under the personal charge and management of a member who is responsible for the work of any assistants;
(b) a member is accessible to meet the needs of the clients;
(c) assistants are adequately trained and supervised; and
(d) no reference to a part-time office shall be made on letterhead, other professional cards or other published material.